MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 38

Wigalois

Wirnt von Grafenberg

Wigalois

Part Two: Korntin and Roaz

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

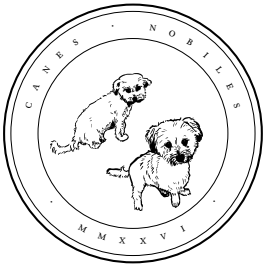


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 38 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Wigalois der Ritter mit dem Rade von Wirnt von Gravenberc, herausgegeben von J. M. N. Kapteyn, Erster Band: Text (Bonn: Fritz Klopp, 1926), verses 5990 to 11708

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are numbered as Kapteyn numbers them, after Benecke, every fifth verse in the outer margin; his metrical marks, a dot under a letter and an occasional grave or acute accent, are printed as he prints them. The paragraphs are his; the reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

XXI · King Jorel's Armor 7
XXII · Ruel 24
XXIII · Karrioz 43
XXIV · Marrien 61
XXV · Roaz 78
XXVI · The Death of Roaz 98
XXVII · Japhite 116
XXVIII · Japhite's Tomb 135
XXIX · The Return to Joraphas 154
XXX · Larie's Journey 175
XXXI · The Princes Come 191
XXXII · The Wedding 210
XXXIII · Gawein at Korntin 229
XXXIV · Liamere 248
XXXV · Lion's Answer 266
XXXVI · The March to Namur 284
XXXVII · The Siege of Namur 301
XXXVIII · The Fall of Namur 321
XXXIX · The End 342

XXI · KING JOREL'S ARMOR

Recovered, Gwigalois resolves to ride to the adventure though he has lost the girdle. The countess offers him a steed and the best armor any emperor wore, made by a dwarf in a mountain, won by Lamer in Libya, and kept for the husband of King Jorel's daughter. He disregards every omen, takes leave, and asks the count to keep the dragon-lance for him; lost in thought, he misses the road and follows a grassy path into the forest to a deep water.

Dô er guot gemach dâ vant
When he good comfort there found

und sînen siechtuom überwant,
and his sickness overcame,

des begunde er got genâde sagen,
for-that began he God thanks to-say,

dar under tougenlîche klagen
there under secretly to-lament

den gürtel und sîn îsengwant.
the girdle and his iron-clothing.

er gedâhte 'nû sol ich zehant
he thought 'now shall I at-once

gegen der âventiure varn;
toward the adventure fare;

wâ mit sol ich mich bewarn
with what shall I myself guard

sît ich den gürtel han verlorn
since I the girdle have lost

den ich ze trôste hêt erkorn
which I as comfort had chosen

zallen mînen dingen?
in-all my things?

noch muoz mir gelingen
yet must to-me succeed

zer selben âventiure;
at-the same adventure;

sin ist nie sô ungehiure
it is never so monstrous

ichn wellè dâ tôt geligen,
unless-I will there dead lie,

od mit der gotes kraft gesigen.
or with the God's strength conquer.

noch mac sîn alles werden rât.
yet may of-it all become counsel.

ich weiz wol, swer den gürtel hât,
I know well, whoever the girdle has,

daz er mirs niht wider gît;
that he me-it not back gives;

dâ von sol ich ze dirre zît
there from shall I at this time

niht vil dar nâch gevrâgen.
not much there after ask.

den lîp wil ich dâ wâgen
the life will I there risk

durch si, der mîn herze gert;
for her, whom my heart desires;

und gît man mir mîn schœnez swert,
and (if)-gives one to-me my beautiful sword,

ein ors und mîn îsengwant,
a steed and my iron-clothing,

sô wil ich rîten zehant
so will I ride at-once

zer âventiure, swâ diu ist.'
to-the adventure, wherever it is.'

nu kom diu vrouwe an der vrist
now came the lady at the time

zuo im gegangen unde sprach, —
to him gone and spoke,—

wande si wol an im sach
for she well in him saw

daz sîn guot gemüete
that his good mind

vil grôziu swære müete;
very great heaviness troubled;

daz siht ouch noch ein ieslîch man
that sees also yet an each man

mit lîhter kunst dem andern an
with light art the other on

daz sîn herze swære treit,
that his heart heaviness bears,

swen er in sîne hant leit
when he into his hand lays

daz houbet und ẹz geneiget hât;
the head and it bowed has;

dar nâch gap si im rât
there after gave she him counsel

und trôst ze sîner swære —
and comfort for his heaviness—

si sprach ‘herre, wære
she spoke ‘lord, were

iuwer herze und iuwer muot
your heart and your mind

dem gelîch als ir tuot,
to-that alike as you do,

daz wær mir inniclîche leit.
that were to-me inwardly sorrowful.

lieber herre mîn, nu seit
dear lord mine, now tell

mir war umb ir trûric sît.'
to-me why about you sad are.'

er sprach 'vrouwe, dâ hân ich zît
he spoke 'lady, there have I time

zer âventiurę ze rîten.'
to-the adventure to ride.'

si sprach 'welt ir da strîten?'
she spoke 'will you there fight?'

'jâ, vrouwe, ich hâns gesworn.'
'yes, lady, I have-it sworn.'

'owê, sô sît ir verlorn.'
'alas, so are you lost.'

'zwâre, vrouwe, nein ich,
'truly, lady, not I,

und welt ir berâten mich,
and (if)-will you provide me,

sô wirt er strîtes von mir gwert.
so becomes he of-strife by me granted.

wirt mir mîn harnasch und mîn swert
(if)-becomes to-me my harness and my sword

und ein guot ors gegeben,
and a good steed given,

deiswâr, sô mac ich mîn leben
truly, so may I my life

gerne wâgen ûf den trôst
gladly risk upon the comfort

daz daz lant werde erlôst,
that the land become freed,

ob ich dem heiden an gesige;
if I the heathen on conquer;

ist abe dạz ich dâ tôt gelige,
is but that I there dead lie,

sô ist manic tiurre rîter tôt.
so is many-a dear knight dead.

nu helft mir, vrouwe, zuo der nôt,
now help me, lady, to the need,

daz ich die âventiure
that I the adventure

iht gar ân iuwer stiure
not wholly without your help

alsô vehten müeze;
so fight must;

des suoche ich iuwer vüeze.
for-that seek I your feet.

ir seht wol ich bin nacket gar,
you see well I am naked wholly,

iedoch wil ich benamen dar;
yet will I assuredly thither;

alsô bin ich ûz gevarn.'
so am I out fared.'

'herre, got müez iuch bewarn!
'lord, God may you guard!

des ist iu benamen nôt:
of-that is to-you assuredly need:

ir welt in den gewissen tôt.
you will into the certain death.

sît ich iuch niht erwenden kan,
since I you not turn can,

sô nemt ein ors daz ich hân,
so take a steed which I have,

bezzer danne hundert marc;
better than hundred marks;

daz ist schœne unde starc.
it is beautiful and strong.

dar zuo gibe ich iu zehant
there to give I you at-once

daz aller beste îsengwant
the of-all best iron-clothing

daz ie dẹhein keisèr getruoc,
which ever any emperor wore,

dar umbe Brîẹn Lâmêren sluoc
there for Brien Lamer slew

an guoten triuwen dâ er lac.
in good faith where he lay.

des ist nû vil manic tac
of-that is now very many-a day

daz ez mîn herre, [der] künc Jorêl,
that it my lord, [the] king Jorel,

mînẹm wirtẹ bevalch an sînẹ sêl
to-my host commended on his soul

daz erz behielte unz an die zît
that he-it kept until to the time

swen sîn tohter würde gehît
when his daughter should-become married

zeinem biderben manne,
to-a worthy man,

daz er den harnasch danne
that he the harness then

im gæbe zẹ sînem lîbe.
to-him should-give for his body.

er wart von einem wîbe
it became by a woman

verstoln einem getwerge
stolen from-a dwarf

alrêrst ûz einem berge,
first out-of a mountain,

dâ ẹz in mit listen gar
where it it with cunning wholly

hêt geworht wol drîzic jâr.
had wrought well thirty years.

er ịst als ein hemde ringe,
it is as a shirt light,

mit deheiner slahte dinge
with of-no kind things

mac man in zebrechen
may one it break

noch dar durch gestechen.
nor there through stab.

welher handẹ der harnasch sî,
of-which kind the harness be,

und wære er al der werlte bî,
and were he all the world by,

daz ẹz iemẹn errâte, des ịst er vrî.
that it anyone guessed, of-that is it free.

Ich sagiu wie ịn Lâmêr gewan,
I tell-you how it Lamer won,

als ichz ê vernomen hân.
as I-it before heard have.

dô man im saget mære
when one to-him told tidings

daz der harnasch wære
that the harness were

in dem lande ze Lîbîâ,
in the land at Libya,

dar vuor er mit here sâ
thither fared he with host at-once

und beroubet die stat und daz lant,
and robbed the city and the land,

unz daz man im daz îsengwant
until that one to-him the iron-clothing

in sîn gezelt muose tragen.
into his tent must carry.

sît wart er darumb erslagen.
afterward became he there-for slain.

daz tet Brîẹn, der bruoder sîn.
that did Brien, the brother his.

dér brâht ez zuo Korntîn
he brought it to Korntin

Jorêl, dem lieben herren mîn.
to-Jorel, the dear lord mine.

Er bevalch ez mînem wirte hie.
He commended it to-my host here.

sît wart ez gezeiget nie
afterward became it shown never

deheinem manne, geloubet daz.
to-any man, believe that.

nu hête wir michel reht, swaz
now had we great right, whatever

wir iuch möhten gêren
we you might honor

und iuwer liep gemêren,
and your joy increase,

daz wir des niht enliezen.'
that we of-that nothing omitted.'

diu vrouwe hiez entsliezen
the lady bade unlock

den sarbalc dâ er inne lac.
the armor-chest where it in lay.

dô schut man ịn ûz an den tac.
then poured one it out into the day.

als er den harnasch rehte ersach,
when he the harness rightly saw,

zem reinen wîbe er dô sprach —
to-the pure woman he then spoke—

diu was ein bluome der güete,
she was a flower of goodness,

ir herze in tugent blüete —
her heart in virtue bloomed—

‘genâde, vrouwe, dirre gebe,
‘thanks, lady, for-this gift,

und wizzet, [daz] die wîle ich lebe,
and know, [that] the while I live,

daz ich ez immer dienen wil;
that I it ever serve will;

dirre gebe ist mir ze vil.’
this gift is to-me too much.’

sînen harnasch truoc man dar.
his harness carried one thither.

der was zebrochen alsô gar
it was broken so wholly

daz er im ze nihte entouc.
that it to-him in nothing availed.

daz reine wîp in niht betrouc
the pure woman him not deceived

an disem, wan dehein man
in this, for no man

bezzern harnasch nie gewan.
better harness never won.

sînen halsberc liez er dâ;
his hauberk left he there;

in disen begunde in wâfen sâ
into this began him to-arm at-once

der wirt und diu wirtin.
the host and the hostess.

er sprach ‘herre, nu vüert ir hin
he spoke ‘lord, now carry you thither

wæn ich in den gewissen tôt,
believe I into the certain death,

wan daz ir alle iuwer nôt
except that you all your distress

sô wol habt überwunden.’
so well have overcome.’

die vrouwen im dô bunden
the ladies for-him then bound

die îsenhosen an diu bein.
the iron-hose on the legs.

sîn herze was herte als ein stein,
his heart was hard as a stone,

wand ez nie dâ von erkam
for it never there from took-fright

swaz er untrôstes ie vernam.
whatever he of-discouragement ever heard.

die zît hêt er dâ wol vertriben,
the time had he there well passed,

wand er die naht was dâ beliben.
for he the night was there remained.

nû was ditz an dem andern tage.
now was this on the other day.

ob ir welt daz ich iu sage
if you will that I to-you tell

wie ẹr zuo der âventiure rit,
how he to the adventure rode,

sô swîgẹt und hœrẹtz mit guotem sit.
so keep-silent and hear-it with good manner.

als er wart gewâfent gar,
when he became armed wholly,

dô brâhtẹ man im den helm dar
then brought one to-him the helm there

mit dem rade guldîn;
with the wheel golden;

den bant im ûf daz houbet sîn
it bound to-him upon the head his

der wirt selbẹ mit sîner hant.
the host self with his hand.

an ein sper man im dô bant
on a spear one to-him then bound

einen samît der was rôt;
a samite which was red;

daz bezeichent daz er in den tôt
that signifies that he into the death

des tages rîten solde.
of-the day ride should.

der wirt im dô wolde
the host to-him then would

gegeben hân ze stiure
given have as help

zuo der âventiure
to the adventure

einen schilt von eines grîfen klâ.
a shield of a griffin's claw.

den hiez er im behalten dâ;
it bade he for-him keep there;

sînen schilt brâht man im sâ.
his shield brought one to-him at-once.

Den vuorte er durch diu mære
It carried he for the tidings

daz er ein rîter wære
that he a knight were

von der tavelrunde,
of the round-table,

daz man dâ bî kunde
that one there by could

sehen unde wizzen daz
see and know that

er zer tavelrunde saz.
he at-the round-table sat.

sînen wâfenroc leit er an;
his surcoat laid he on;

der was rîche und wol getân,
it was rich and well made,

wan daz er was durchstochen
except that it was pierced-through

und mangen endẹ zebrochen;
and many ends broken;

den vuorte der helt mêre
it carried the hero more

durch sîner vrouwen êre
for his lady's honor

danne durch sîn armuot;
than for his poverty;

er dûhte in bezzer danne guot.
it seemed to-him better than goods.

sîn swert striht im daz süeze wîp
his sword buckled to-him the sweet woman

vil heize weinde umḅ den lîp
very hotly weeping about the body

und vlêget got vil tiure
and implored God very dearly

daz er die âventiure
that he the adventure

in dâ lieze erwerben,
him there should-let win,

und daz in niht verderben
and that him not perish

lieze diu gotes güete.
should-let the God's goodness.

dehein ungeloube in müete
no superstition him troubled

in dem hûsẹ noch ûf dem wege;
in the house nor upon the way;

er liez ẹz allez an gotes pflege.
he left it all to God's care.

swaz im des morgens wider lief
whatever him of-the morning against ran

od swie vil diu krâ gerief,
or however much the crow cried,

swie vil der mûsærẹ umbe gevlouc,
however much of-the buzzards about flew,

der ungeloube in niht betrouc,
the superstition him not deceived,

wand er dâ niht ûf ahte.
for he there nothing upon heeded.

wir hân nu manger slahte
we have now of-many kinds

bôsheit und gelouben,
wickedness and beliefs,

dâ mit wir uns rouben
there with we ourselves rob

aller unser sælicheit:
of-all our blessedness:

ez ist vil mangem manne leit
it is to-very many-a man sorrowful

swen im ein wîp daz swert gît;
when to-him a woman the sword gives;

daz lie der rîter âne nît;
that let the knight without hatred;

ern ahte dar ûf niht ein hâr,
he heeded there upon not a hair,

ez wære gelogen ode wâr;
it were lied or true;

er hêt in gotes gnâde ergeben
he had himself to-God's grace given

beidiu sêle unde leben.
both soul and life.

swaz im des morgens wider gie,
whatever him of-the morning against went,

dazn gevlôch der rîter nie,
that fled the knight never,

wan guoten glouben hêt er ie.
for good belief had he ever.

Dô nam er urloup von in dâ.
Then took he leave from them there.

wirt und vrouwen neic er sâ
to-host and ladies bowed he at-once

und gnâḍẹt in alles guotes,
and thanked them for-all good,

der werke und ir muotes,
for-the works and for-their mind,

dar nâch dem [gẹ]sinde über al.
there after to-the [house]hold over all.

vil manic guot wunsch âne zal
very many-a good wish without number

wart im gegeben an der stat.
became to-him given in the place.

daz liut im allez heiles bat
the people for-him all salvation begged

und segenten in in den tôt.
and blessed him into the death.

sîn dienst er dô in allen bôt
his service he then to-them all offered

und bat den reinen wirt sâ
and begged the pure host at-once

daz er die glävîen dâ
that he the lance there

bî dem wurme suochte
by the serpent sought

und sị im behalten ruochte
and it for-him keep deigned

unz er dar wider kæme,
until he thither back should-come,

ob er den sic genæme
if he the victory took

zer selben âventiure.
at-the same adventure.

dô gelobt der wirt vil tiure
then promised the host very dearly

daz er gerne tæte
that he gladly should-do

swes er in gebæte.
whatever he him should-beg.

diu vrouwe sprach ‘herre mîn,
the lady spoke ‘lord mine,

wir suln iu beidiu immer sîn
we shall to-you both ever be

bereit unsers muotes,
ready of-our mind,

lîbes unde guotes,
of-body and of-goods,

wand iuwer grôziu manheit
for your great manhood

diu benam mir mîn herzeleit.
it took-from me my heart-sorrow.

dô ich in grôzem jâmer lac
when I in great grief lay

und deheiner slahte vreude pflac,
and of-no kind joy practiced,

dô kômet ir und trôsṭet mich;
then came you and comforted me;

dâ von ist michel reht daz ich
there from is great right that I

iu dienstes wes undertân
to-you in-service be subject

swâ ich mac unde kan.
wherever I may and can.

ouch bit wir iuch vil verre,
also beg we you very far,

ob iuch unser herre
if you our lord

den sic lâze erwerben dâ,
the victory let win there,

daz ir dannẹ ḥer wider sâ
that you then hither back at-once

an guot gemach rîtet
to good comfort ride

als ir dâ gestrîtet.'
when you there have-fought.'

er sprach 'vrouwe, daz sî getân!
he spoke 'lady, that be done!

iuwer bet bin ich undertân
to-your request am I subject

ob mir got des lîbes gan.'
if to-me God of-the life grants.'

Sîn ors wart im gezogen dar;
His steed became to-him led there;

daz was in einer varwe gar
it was in one color wholly

rehte rôt als ein bluot;
right red as a blood;

dar ûf saz der rîter guot.
there upon sat the knight good.

man reichte im schilt unde sper.
one reached to-him shield and spear.

von dem hûse kêrt er
from the house turned he

eine strâze, diu was wol gebant;
a road, which was well trodden;

diu solde in tragen in daz lant
it should him carry into the land

ze Glois, dâ der heiden saz.
at Glois, where the heathen sat.

sîn manic [gẹ]müete vuocte im daz
his many-a [m]ind caused to-him that

er die strâze übersach.
he the road overlooked.

einem stîge volgẹt er nâch
a path followed he after

ûz gegen der linken hant,
out toward the left hand,

der was grasic unde ungebant.
which was grassy and untrodden.

er truoc in verre in den walt,
it carried him far into the forest,

dâ manic boum was gevalt
where many-a tree was felled

und grôze ronen lâgen.
and great trunks lay.

dô begunde in des betrâgen
then began him of-that to-weary

daz er sîn ors allez zôch.
that he his steed all drew.

ze stîgen er die ronen vlôch.
for paths he the trunks fled.

an ein wazzer er dô reit,
to a water he then rode,

daz was tief und sô breit
which was deep and so broad

daz niht vurtes dạrüber gie.
that no ford there-over went.

er gedâhte 'herre got, wie
he thought 'lord God, how

kum ich über dạz wazzer hie?'
come I over the water here?'

XXII · RUEL

He finds a raft, but the monstrous woman Ruel, black and shaggy, set against Enite and Jeschute, seizes him, binds him in her cave, and swings his own sword at him, until his horse's neighing, which she takes for the dragon she fears, puts her to flight. At his prayer the withy loosens; he swears never again to be taken without striking first, crosses on the raft, and regains the road to Glois, where sixty spears stand before a bridge, kept by a knight whose shield shows Mahomet on a pillar.

Sîn ors hafter vaste
His steed tied-he fast

zeinem starken aste,
to-a strong branch,

wand ern mohtẹ niht vürbaz.
for he might not further.

swie snel er wære, sîn gên was laz,
however swift he were, his going was slack,

wand er muose sliefen dâ.
for he must creep there.

nu sach er ûf dem wazzer sâ
now saw he upon the water at-once

vliezen einen kleinen vlôz,
float a small raft,

den ein starkiu wide slôz
which a strong withy fastened

bî einem stecken zuo dem stade;
by a stake to the shore;

dar kom der rîter mit dem rade
thither came the knight with the wheel

von des waldes enge
from the forest's narrowness

gesloffen durch gedrenge.
crept through thicket.

er nam den vlôz und zôch in dan
he took the raft and drew it away

dâ er sîn ors hêt lâzen stân.
where he his steed had let stand.

nu was bî im ein holer stein.
now was by him a hollow rock.

ûz dem hole sach er ein
out-of the hole saw he a

wîp gegẹn im loufen dar,
woman toward him run thither,

diu was in einer varwe gar
who was in one color wholly

swarz, rûch als ein ber.
black, rough as a bear.

vil grôziu schœne was der
very great beauty was to-her

und guot gebærde tiure,
and good bearing scarce,

wan si was ungehiure:
for she was monstrous:

ir hâr enpflohten unde lanc,
her hair unbraided and long,

zetal in ir buoc ez swanc.
down into her shoulder it swung.

daz houbet grôz, ir nase vlach.
the head great, her nose flat.

daz wîp ûz grôzer riuhe sach
the woman out-of great roughness looked

als zwô kerzen brünnen dâ.
as-if two candles burned there.

ir brâ lanc unde grâ,
her brows long and gray,

grôze zene, wîten munt;
great teeth, wide mouth;

zwei ôren hêt si als ein hunt,
two ears had she as a dog,

diu hiengen nider spanne breit.
they hung down a-span broad.

als uns diu âventiure seit,
as us the adventure tells,

sô was diu schœnẹ Lârîe
so was the beautiful Larie

schœner danne ir drîe.
more-beautiful than of-her three.

der rücke was ir ûf gebogen,
the back was to-her up bent,

dâ ẹngegẹn ein hover ûz gezogen
there against a hump out drawn

ob dem herzen als ein huot.
above the heart as a hat.

hêt iemen von ir hôhen muot,
had anyone from her high spirit,

dern sach der vrouwẹn Ênîten niht,
he saw the lady Enite not,

wan der herre Hartman giht,
for the lord Hartman says,

daz wær gar ûz dem strîte
that were wholly out-of the dispute

ezn wære vrouwe Ênîte
unless-it were lady Enite

ze Karidôl diu schœnste maget,
at Karidol the most-beautiful maiden,

als im sîn meister hêt gesaget.
as to-him his master had told.

ir brüste nider hiengen;
her breasts down hung;

die sîten si beviengen
the sides they enclosed

gelîch zwein grôzen taschen dâ.
like two great pouches there.

als ein grîfe hêt si klâ
as a griffin had she claws

an den vingern allen.
on the fingers all.

rôt und linde ballen
red and soft balls

die man an schœnen vrouwen siht,
which one on beautiful ladies sees,

ich wæne wol dern hêt si niht:
I believe well of-those had she not:

si wârn ir herte als einem bern.
they were to-her hard as to-a bear.

swen si ir minne solde wern,
whomever she her love should grant,

daz wær ein sûrez trûten.
that were a sour caressing.

ir lîp der vrouwẹn Jeschûten,
her body to-the lady Jeschute,

diu dâ was sô sælden rîch,
who there was so of-blessedness rich,

was des tages ungelîch
was of-the day unlike

dô si in ir gezelte slief
when she in her tent slept

und si Parzivâl an lief.
and her Parzival on ran.

als in lêrtẹ diu muoter sîn,
as him taught the mother his,

er zôch ir abe ein vingerlîn
he drew from-her off a little-ring

und nam ir vürspan âne ir danc.
and took her brooch against her will.

ein lützel er mit ir geranc
a little he with her wrestled

und kuste sị an ir rôten munt
and kissed her on her red mouth

âne sin: im was unkunt
without sense: to-him was unknown

waz ez dem herzen vreude gît;
what it to-the heart of-joy gives;

dar umbe leit si kumber sît.
there for suffered she grief afterward.

si wârn gelîch, als ich ẹz weiz,
they were alike, as I it know,

reht als ein bin einer geiz.
right as a bee to-a goat.

disiu was ungehiure;
this-one was monstrous;

sô was Jeschûten tiure
so was to-Jeschute scarce

swaz vrouwen lîbe ie missezam.
whatever to-ladies' body ever misbefitted.

daz lop gît ir her Wolfram,
the praise gives her lord Wolfram,

ein wîse man von Eschenbach;
a wise man of Eschenbach;

sîn herze ist ganzes sinnes dach; 6345
his heart is of-whole wit roof;

leien munt nie baz gesprach.
layman's mouth never better spoke.

Daz wîp dûht in unsüeze:
The woman seemed to-him unsweet:

starkiu bein, krumbe vüeze
strong legs, crooked feet

hêt si, sus was si gestalt.
had she, thus was she shaped.

ein kurziu naht diu machẹt in alt 6350
a short night it makes him old

swer bî ir solde sîn gelegen;
whoever by her should be lain;

sô süezer minne kunde sị pflegen.
so sweet love could she practice.

si hiez diu starke Rûel
she was-called the strong Ruel

und was so vreislîche snel
and was so fearfully swift

daz ir dehein tier entran. 6355
that from-her no beast escaped.

Ferôz geheizen was ir man.
Feroz called was her husband.

den sluoc Flojîr von Belamunt;
him slew Flojir of Belamunt;

den zôch er an des sêwes grunt
him drew he to the lake's bottom

mit im töunde in sîner nôt;
with him dying in his distress;

dâ lâgens bî ein ander tôt.
there lay-they by one other dead.

sus verlôs sị ir lieben man;
thus lost she her dear husband;

des wolde sị in engelten lân.
for-that would she him pay let.

si lief zuo im âne wer;
she ran to him without defense;

ir einer sterkẹ was im ein her.
her one strength was to-him a host.

desn trûwẹt der junge rîter niht.
of-that trusted the young knight not.

von missetriuwẹ vil ofte geschiht
from mistrust very often happens

daz den liuten missegêt.
that to-the people miscarries.

swer daz gerne understêt,
whoever that gladly prevents,

der sî gewarnet zaller zît:
he be warned at-all time:

vil lîhte erz anders missegît.
very easily he-it otherwise misgives.

alsô übergap erz dâ.
so gave-up he-it there.

daz starke wîp begreif in sâ,
the strong woman seized him at-once,

wan ṣi endûhte in des niht wert
for she seemed to-him of-that not worth

daz er gegen ir sîn swert
that he against her his sword

immer gevuorte,
ever carried,

wan grôziu tugent ruorte
for great virtue touched

sîn herze zallen stunden.
his heart at-all hours.

als er wære gebunden,
as-if he were bound,

sô truoc in diu tiuvelin
so carried him the she-devil

under ir starken armen hin.
under her strong arms thither.

swie starc der rîter wære
however strong the knight were

und swie wîten mære
and however widely famous

wær sîn grôziu manheit,
were his great manhood,

diu selbe vrouwe ungemeit
the same lady unjoyful

truoc in hin als einen sac.
carried him thither as a sack.

‘owê, daz ich disen tac
‘alas, that I this day

ie gelebte!’ sprach der degen.
ever lived-to!’ spoke the thane.

‘nû ṣist mîn kraft gar gelegen;
‘now is my strength wholly lain;

waz touc mir mîn manheit?
what avails me my manhood?

ditz ist ein jæmerlîchez leit!
this is a wretched sorrow!

sol ich alsô verderben
shall I so perish

und âne wer ersterben
and without defense die

von dirre crêatiure?'
by this creature?'

si tet imz allez tiure
she made to-him-it all scarce

beidiu sprechen unde regen.
both speaking and stirring.

vrouwe Lûnetę kunde pflegen
lady Lunete could take-care

des rîters mit dem lewen baz,
of-the knight with the lion better,

dô er gevangen bî ir saz.
when he captive by her sat.

disiu tet als ír gezam:
this-one did as to-her befitted:

dem jungen rîter si dô nam
from-the young knight she then took

die kraft und sîne sinne;
the strength and his wits;

guotes wîbes minne
good woman's love

was ir trûten ungelîch;
was her caressing unlike;

sus sint die minne mislîch:
thus are the loves various:

diu eine ist arm, diu ander rîch.
the one is poor, the other rich.

Rûel diu ungehiure
Ruel the monstrous

ergatzt in der âventiure
compensated him for-the adventure

und swaz im liebes ie geschach.
and whatever to-him of-joy ever happened.

daz swert sị im von der sîten brach
the sword she from-him from the side broke

und zôch im abez îsengwant;
and drew from-him off-the iron-clothing;

mit einer wide si im bant
with a withy she to-him bound

beide hende hinder sich.
both hands behind himself.

owê leider, nu dunket mich
alas alas, now seems to-me

daz er mit sînem lîbe
that he with his life

iht kœmẹ von disem wîbe,
aught should-come from this woman,

des wær er weizgot unwert!
of-that were he God-knows unworthy!

si zôch im ûz sîn eigen swert;
she drew for-him out his own sword;

bî dem hâre vuortẹ sin hin;
by the hair led she-him thither;

über ein ronen druhte in
over a trunk pressed him

daz wîp bî sînem hâre, owê!
the woman by his hair, alas!

nu sprechet, wiez im dâ ergê.
now speak, how-it to-him there goes.

daz swert swanc si gegẹn im her.
the sword swung she toward him hither.

in dirre nôt gedâht er
in this distress thought he

der schœnen magt Lârîen.
of-the beautiful maiden Larie.

sîn ors begunde schrîen
his steed began to-cry

und ze weien sêre.
and to neigh sorely.

dem wîbe enwart niht mêre
to-the woman became nothing more

wan daz sin alsô ligen liez;
except that she-him so lie let;

daz swert sị in die scheide stiez
the sword she into the sheath thrust

und vlôch ûz dem hol zehant
and fled out-of the hole at-once

ûf ein ander steinwant
up-onto an other rock-wall

ein pfat, daz was vil enge,
a path, which was very narrow,

durch michel gedrenge.
through great thicket.

waz dem wîbe wære,
what to-the woman were,

welt ir daz selbe mære
will you the same tale

hœren, daz wil ich iu sagen:
hear, that will I to-you tell:

der wurm den dâ hêt erslagen
the serpent which there had slain

der rîter mit sîner hant,
the knight with his hand,

der kom zuo der steinwant
it came to the rock-wall

vil oft mit solhem schalle
very often with such clamor

daz die berge alle
that the mountains all

schullen von sînem lûte
resounded from its sound

nâch des tievels trûte;
after the devil's darling;

der wurm wesse si dâ wol.
the serpent knew her there well.

sị entran im ofte ûz dem hol
she escaped it often out-of the hole

ûf ein ander steinwant
up-onto an other rock-wall

als ir der zagel wær verbrant.
as-if to-her the tail were burnt.

si vorhte ir sêre; des gienc ir nôt:
she feared her sorely; of-that went to-her need:

swaz er begreif, daz was tôt;
whatever it gripped, that was dead;

niemen mohtẹ sich sîn erwern
no-one might himself of-it defend

noch vor sînem stanke ernern;
nor from its stench save;

dâ von vlôch des tievels trût.
there from fled the devil's darling.

dô si erhôrtẹ des rosses lût,
when she heard the horse's sound,

dô wânde si ér kæme dâ;
then believed she it should-come there;

von dem rîter vlôch si sâ,
from the knight fled she at-once,

wan sị entrûwet niht genesen,
for she trusted not to-survive,

als ez sîn sælde solde wesen
as it his blessedness should be

der dâ vor ir gebunden lac;
who there before her bound lay;

vür den trôst sîn zwîvel wac.
against the comfort his doubt weighed.

ditz was wol umbe mitten tac.
this was well about mid day.

Wem kom der tôt sô nâhen ie?
To-whom came the death so near ever?

âne den tôt gevreischt ich nie
without the death heard I never

angestlîcher iemen ligen;
more-fearfully anyone lie;

des lebens was im gar verzigen.
of-the life was to-him wholly renounced.

dô si daz swert gegẹn im swanc,
when she the sword toward him swung,

dôn hêt er des deheinen [gẹ]danc
then had he of-that no [th]ought

daz er iht lenger solde leben,
that he aught longer should live,

hêt imz got niht gegeben.
had to-him-it God not given.

des genâde ist niht gelîch;
whose grace is nothing alike;

daz erzeigẹt er aller tägelîch.
that shows he of-all daily.

er nidert hôch gemüete
he lowers high mind

und hœhet alle güete;
and raises all goodness;

er ermet unde rîchet,
he impoverishes and enriches,

den rîchen er gelîchet
the rich he likens

dem armen, swenne er wil.
to-the poor, whenever he will.

ditz was sînes gwaltes spil,
this was his power's play,

daz er disem küenen man
that he from-this bold man

sînen trôst an gewan,
his comfort on won,

den sîn herze ungerne liez;
which his heart unwillingly left;

in ganzen zwîvel er in stiez,
into whole doubt he him thrust,

dâ von er sîne vreude lie.
there from he his joy left.

got der was genædic ie;
God he was gracious ever;

daz erzeigṭẹr an disem rîter hie.
that showed-he on this knight here.

Dô er sus an dem tôde lac
When he thus at the death lay

und daz sîn lebèn zem tôde wac,
and that his life to-the death weighed,

dô kom er im ze trôste;
then came he to-him as comfort;

sîn barmunge in erlôste
his mercy him freed

daz im dehein schadè geschach
that to-him no harm happened

wan daz er vreise vor im sach.
except that he peril before him saw.

dô daz wîp von im dan
when the woman from him away

gevlôch und der gebunden man
fled and the bound man

in dem hole niemen sach,
in the hole no-one saw,

dô stuont er ûf unde sprach
then stood he up and spoke

‘nu hilf mir, herre, süezer got!
‘now help me, lord, sweet God!

lâ dîn genâde und dîn gebot
let thy grace and thy command

an mir schînèn: daz êret dich.
on me shine: that honors thee.

mit dîner kraft enbinde mich,
with thy strength unbind me,

daz mir mînen jungen lîp
that from-me my young body

iht beneme ein solch wîp
not take a such woman

diu der helle zæme.
who to-the hell befitted.

wær si doch sô genæme
were she yet so pleasing

daz ich si möhte an gesehen,
that I her might on look,

sô wær mir deste baz geschehen.
so were to-me the better happened.

herre got, erhœre mich!’
lord God, hear me!’

in dirre bet sô lôste sich
in this prayer so loosed itself

diu starke wide dâ er mit
the strong withy where he with

gebunden was nâch diebes sit.
bound was after thief's manner.

dô sich diu starke wide enbant
when itself the strong withy unbound

und im enbunden wart sîn hant,
and to-him unbound became his hand,

sînen êrsten grif den tet er nider
his first grasp it did he down

nâch sînem swertę, dạz nam er wider
after his sword, that took he back

dâ erz bî im ligen sach.
where he-it by him lie saw.

er kuste dạran unde sprach
he kissed there-on and spoke

'ô wol mich, swert, daz ich dich hân!
'oh well for-me, sword, that I thee have!

nûn ist weder wîp noch man
now is neither woman nor man

der mich binde âne wer;
who me binds without defense;

ûf dînem knopfe ich des swer
upon thy pommel I of-that swear

die wîle ich swert tragen wil:
the while I sword bear will:

ez sî ernest ode ein spil,
it be earnest or a play,

daz ez mir nimmer mê geschiht,
that it to-me never more happens,

swâ mîn ouge iht des siht
wherever my eye aught of-that sees

daz mînem lîbe geschaden mac,
which to-my body harm may,

ichn slahe ie doch den êrsten slac
unless-I strike ever yet the first blow

dem daz ungehiure sî.
to-whom that monstrous be.

ditz was aller triuwen vrî,
this was of-all faith free,

ez hêt mir anders widersaget.
it had to-me otherwise defied.

ezn wirt hie nû niht mê geklaget
it becomes here now not more lamented

sît ich mîn swert wider hân.'
since I my sword back have.'

sînen harnasch schutter an
his harness poured-he on

und gie von dem steine nider
and went from the rock down

balde zę sînem orse wider.
quickly to his steed back.

von dem aste erz enbant
from the branch he-it unbound

und zôch ez an den vlôz zehant;
and drew it onto the raft at-once;

mit einem aste schielt er in
with a branch pushed he it

über dạz breite wazzer hin
over the broad water thither

anderhalbe an daz stat;
on-the-other-side to the shore;

vil snelle er dâ abe trat
very swiftly he there off stepped

und zôch daz ors nâch im dan.
and drew the steed after him away.

sus was genesẹn der küene man
thus was recovered the bold man

von dirre crêatiure.
from this creature.

gegẹn der âventiure
toward the adventure

kêrtẹ der edel rîter sâ.
turned the noble knight at-once.

einen stîc den vant er dâ,
a path it found he there,

der truoc in an die strâze wider.
it carried him to the road back.

gegen Glois reit er nider.
toward Glois rode he down.

von der brücke stahten her
from the bridge stuck hither

gegẹn im sehzic starkiu sper
toward him sixty strong spears

eine mîle ûf dem wege.
a mile upon the way.

diu hêt ein rîtẹr in sîner pflege,
them had a knight in his care,

der was ze harnasche wol,
who was in harness well,

als ze strîte ein rîter sol.
as for fight a knight shall.

er reit ein ors swarz gevar,
he rode a steed black colored,

mit einer kovertiure gar
with a caparison wholly

bedecket von samîte;
covered of samite;

an der zeswen sîte
on the right side

was si grüene alsam ein gras;
was it green as a grass;

dâ zer winstern hant si was
there at-the left hand it was

tunkel rôt als ein bluot.
dark red as a blood.

sin schilt was niuwe unde guot;
his shield was new and good;

daz diu buckel solde sîn,
what the boss should be,

daz was ein bluome guldîn,
that was a flower golden,

geworht mit grôzem vlîze;
wrought with great diligence;

von liehter varwe wîze
of bright color white

was der schilt über al;
was the shield over all;

von rôtem golde ein lîste smal
of red gold a border narrow

was geleit ûf den rant;
was laid upon the rim;

drinné — dâ bî daz was bekant
there-in there by that was known

daz er von Glois ein rîter was —
that he of Glois a knight was—

ein sûl, diu glaste als ein glas
a pillar, which gleamed as a glass

von lâzûre und von golde;
of azure and of gold;

als er leben solde,
as-if he live should,

Machmet dar ûffe saz;
Mahomet there upon sat;

dâ bî man solde wizzen daz
there by one should know that

sich niht erwerte sîm gebot;
itself nothing defended against-his command;

durch daz vuort er der heiden got.
for that carried he the heathen's god.

daz wâfen was des rîters spot.
the arms were of-the knight mockery.

XXIII · KARRIOZ

The knight of the spears is the dwarfish Karrioz, son of a wild woman, in the hide of a lion he slew barehanded. They break the spears without either falling, then fight with club and sword until evening, when Gwigalois runs him through the breast; Karrioz flees into a black mist rising from a moor, which fastens on him like resin. Gwigalois crosses the moor by a causeway to a marble gate guarded by Roaz's bronze wheel set with swords and clubs; caught between the wheel and the returning mist, he commends himself to God and sleeps.

Ouch vuorte̥ der selbe tievels trût
Also wore the same devil's darling

an im eines lewen hût
on him a lion's hide

ob einem halsberge wîz.
over a hauberk white.

an sînem helmę lac grôzer vlîz
on his helm lay great diligence

von golde und von gesteine,
of gold and of gems,

grôz unde kleine;
great and small;

daz was mit vlîze geleit dar în;
that was with diligence laid there in;

zaller obrist ein rubîn,
at-all topmost a ruby,

der was grœzer danne ein ei;
which was greater than an egg;

den liehten helm teilte enzwei
the bright helm divided in-two

von rôtem golde ein lîste smal.
of red gold a border narrow.

von dem rubîn hin ze tal
from the ruby thither to dale

[vil] lützèl sîn ob dem satel schein:
[*very*] *little of-him above the saddle appeared:*

grôze arme und kurziu bein
great arms and short legs

hêt er nâch der getwerge sit.
had he after the dwarfs' manner.

ich wæn ie iemen baz gestrit
I believe ever anyone better fought

danne der vil kurze man
than the very short man

dâ vil ofte hêt getân.
there very often had done.

der âventiure huot er
the adventure guarded he

vil mangen tac, daz diu sper
very many-a day, so-that the spears

niemen gar widẹr in vertet;
no-one wholly against him spent;

ez hêt gesiget an der stet
there had conquered in the place

sîn hant an mangem rîter guot,
his hand over many-a knight good,

dem vil hôhe stuont sîn muot.
to-whom very high stood his mind.

swie kurz er wære, sîn kraft was grôz.
however short he were, his strength was great.

er hiez der küene Karriôz.
he was-called the bold Karrioz.

sîn muoter was ein wildez wîp;
his mother was a wild woman;

dâ von was im sîn kurzer lîp
there from was to-him his short body

aller rûch unde starc.
all rough and strong.

sîn gebeine was âne marc
his bones were without marrow

nâch dem geslähtẹ der muoter sîn;
after the kind of-the mother his;

deste sterker muose er sîn.
the stronger must he be.

einem man was er ein her.
to-one man was he a host.

den lewen vienc er âne wer
the lion caught he without defense

und sluoc in mit nacter hant;
and slew it with naked hand;

bî der hût was daz bekant
by the hide was that known

die er dâ ze kleide truoc,
which he there as clothing wore,

daz er den lewen eine sluoc.
that he the lion alone slew.

Karriôz leisierte dort
Karrioz cantered there

gegẹn den speren an sîn ort
toward the spears at his place

und was im daz vil ungemach
and was to-him that very displeasing

daz er disen rîter sach
that he this knight saw

sô vrävelîch dâ rîten.
so boldly there ride.

daz er wolde strîten
that he would fight

mit im, des gedâht er.
with him, of-that thought he.

mit zorne nam er ḍạz êrste sper,
with anger took he the first spear,

wand ez stahte bî im dâ.
for it stuck by him there.

gegẹn dem gaste kêrte er sâ
toward the guest turned he at-once

mit hôhem muote, mit ganzer kraft.
with high spirit, with whole strength.

er vreute sich der rîterschaft
he rejoiced himself of-the knighthood

und der jost die er dâ nam;
and of-the joust which he there took;

her Gwîgâlois der tet alsam;
lord Gwigalois he did likewise;

in beiden was zesamne ger.
in them-both was together eager.

mit ganzer kunst si diu sper
with whole art they the spears

under die arme sluogen;
under the arms struck;

zesamne si dô truogen
together they then carried

diu ors sô krefticlîche
the steeds so mightily

daz si verstâchen glîche
that they spent alike

mit einer rîchen jost diu sper.
with a rich joust the spears.

ir ietweder gâhte her
of-them each hastened hither

nâch einem sper an sîn ort,
after a spear to his place,

daz ir ḍeweder dehein wort
so-that of-them neither any word

zuo dem andern nie gesprach;
to the other never spoke;

von hôhem muote daz geschach.
from high spirit that happened.

Karriôz dem was unwert
to-Karrioz it was unworthy

daz er die jost hêt gewert
that he the joust had held

âne vallen wider in.
without falling against him.

nâch ganzem strîṭę ranc ie sîn sin.
after whole fighting strove ever his mind.

gegẹn dem gaste kêrte er hin.
toward the guest turned he thither.

Her Gwîgâlois was bereit;
Lord Gwigalois was ready;

mit sînem sper er gegẹn im reit;
with his spear he toward him rode;

an manheit verzagt er nie.
in manhood despaired he never.

Karriôz in dô enpfie
Karrioz him then received

mit einem sper daz was starc.
with a spear which was strong.

zesamne truogen si diu marc
together carried they the steeds

mit gelîcher gir, mit solher kraft
with equal desire, with such strength

daz ir ietweders schaft
that of-them each's shaft

zebrochen in die lüfte spranc
broken into the air sprang

und daz diu ros gelîchen wanc
and that the horses alike swerving

an die hahsen tâten nider.
onto the hocks did down.

ir ietweder gâhte wider
of-them each hastened back

dâ er daz næhste sper vant.
where he the nearest spear found.

sus verstâchen si zehant
thus spent they at-once

diu sper mit solhem nîde gar
the spears with such hatred wholly

daz die schilte goltvar
that the shields gold-colored

vür stiche wâren dehein guot.
against stabs were no good.

dannoch was ir beider muot
still was of-them both mind

unverschert an manheit;
unshorn in manhood;

ir ganziu kraft diu was bereit;
their whole strength it was ready;

ir einẹn der tôt doch dâ versneit.
of-them one the death yet there cut-down.

Dô in der sper gar zeran
When to-them the spears wholly ran-out

und Karriôz sich des versan,
and Karrioz himself of-that knew,

einen kolben er gevienc,
a club he grasped,

der im an dem arme hienc;
which to-him on the arm hung;

der was von stâle harte grôz.
it was of steel very great.

in beide hende er in slôz
into both hands he it locked

und reit den jungen rîter an.
and rode the young knight at.

Gwîgâlois, der küene man,
Gwigalois, the bold man,

von im nie einen trit gevlôch.
from him never a step fled.

sîn swert er ûz der scheide zôch
his sword he out-of the sheath drew

und slúoc ín ûf dén rubîn,
and struck him upon the ruby,

daz vil manic liehter schîn
that very many-a bright shine

von viure gegẹn im glaste.
of fire toward him gleamed.

Karriôz ouch vaste
Karrioz also fast

mit sînem kolben ûf in sluoc.
with his club upon him struck.

ir dweder dęm andern niht vertruoc.
of-them neither to-the other nothing endured.

dem jungen rîter vrumte daz
to-the young knight availed that

er ze orse kunde baz
he on steed could better

strîten dannę der kurze man.
fight than the short man.

des kraft was ab sô getân
whose strength was but so made

und sîn grôziu manheit:
and his great manhood:

hêt er sich im niht entseit,
had he himself from-him not withdrawn,

als er den slac gegęn im bôt,
when he the blow toward him offered,

er wær von sînen slegen tôt.
he were from his blows dead.

her Gwîgâlois mit kündicheit
lord Gwigalois with cunning

wider disen rîter streit
against this knight fought

unz daz der âbent ane gie.
until that the evening on went.

sîn kunst in dô dâ vervie
his art him then there availed

und sîn swert, wan daz was guot,
and his sword, for that was good,

daz er im durch den stâlhuot
that he to-him through the steel-hat

sluoc eine tiefe wunden.
struck a deep wound.

als er der hêt enpfunden,
when he it had felt,

dô was im zuo dem gaste ger.
then was to-him to the guest eager.

mit beiden handen reicht er
with both hands reached he

nâch im mit grimmem muote.
after him with grim mind.

her Gwîgâlois mit huote
lord Gwigalois with heed

allez vor im wancte dan
all before him swerved away

unz er im aber an gewan
until he from-him again on won

einen slac alsam ê;
a blow as before;

der tet im herzenlîche wê,
it did him heartily woe,

als er dâ zehant jach,
as he there at-once said,

wand er im durch die brust stach
for he him through the breast stabbed

mit des schœnen swertes ort.
with the beautiful sword's point.

der kurze man der schrei mort
the short man he cried murder

und oymê, des gienc im nôt:
and woe-is-me, of-that went to-him need:

derselbe slac gap im den tôt,
the-same blow gave him the death,

des gwalt dô über in gebôt.
whose power then over him commanded.

Als er des tôdes rehte enpfant,
When he of-the death rightly felt,

gegen Glois vlôch er zehant
toward Glois fled he at-once

und schrei sô lûte daz erschal
and cried so loudly that resounded

beidiu bergę unde tal
both hill and dale

und daz der luft sich gegęn im kloup.
and that the air itself toward him split.

von sîner vluht wart der stoup
from his flight became the dust

alsô grôz ûf dem wege
so great upon the way

daz er ûz sîner ougen pflege
that he out-of his eyes' care

kom in kurzer wîle,
came in short while,

swie er im doch mit île
however he him yet with haste

ûf dem wege volget nâch.
upon the way followed after.

her Gwîgâlois dô vor im sach
lord Gwigalois then before him saw

einen nebel der was swarz,
a mist which was black,

alse swebel unde harz
as-if sulfur and resin

ensamet brunnen beide
together burned both

über al ûf der heide.
over all upon the heath.

dar în vlôch der kurze man;
there into fled the short man;

dâ gesigt ouch im der tôt an.
there conquered also him the death on.

der nebẹl ûz einem mose gie;
the mist out-of a moor went;

die âventiure er bevie
the adventure it enclosed

umbe und umbe als ein rinc.
round and round as a ring.

ditz was ein harte vremdez dinc
this was a very strange thing

daz nieman her ûz noch drin,
that no-one hither out nor there-in,

als ichs bewîset bin,
as I-it informed am,

weder reit noch engie
neither rode nor went

unz daz diu sunne ir schîn verlie,
until that the sun its shine left,

sô daz si entweich der naht;
so that it gave-way to-the night;

sô was niwan daz mos bedaht;
so was only the moor covered;

dar ûf legt sich der nebel nider;
there upon laid itself the mist down;

mit der naht steic er ie wider.
with the night rose it ever again.

ditz was ein vil kurziu zît.
this was a very short time.

an der wîle ḥêt sich der strît
in the while had itself the fight

verendet zwischẹn in beiden;
ended between them both;

der tôt hêt si gescheiden,
the death had them parted,

als ich iu ê gesaget hân.
as I to-you before told have.

Karriôz sich niht versan
Karrioz himself not knew

und wolde durch den nebel dan
and would through the mist away

gevlohen sîn; dô was er an
fled be; then was it on

in gevallen als ein harz.
him fallen as a resin.

sîn wâfen daz was allez swarz,
his arms they were all black,

daz ê in liehter varwe schein;
which before in bright color shone;

sîn ros was als ein bechstein
his horse was as a pitch-stone

erstarret und bestecket;
stiffened and stuck;

der nebẹl ḥêt in bedecket
the mist had him covered

dicker danne eins mannes hant;
thicker than a man's hand;

alsô tôten er in vant.
so dead he him found.

swenne der nebel nider gie,
whenever the mist down went,

swaz er under im bevie,
whatever it under itself caught,

daz lîmte er zesamne gar.
that glued it together wholly.

dô des der rîter wart gewar
when of-that the knight became aware

der nâch der âventiure reit,
who after the adventure rode,

sîn rîten er dar în vermeit
his riding he there into avoided

unz er sich ûf daz mos gelie.
until he himself onto the moor let.

eine strâze er dô gevie,
a road he then took,

diu was gebrücket über dạz mos;
which was bridged over the moor;

dar an truoc in sîn schœnez ros.
there on carried him his beautiful horse.

nu was diu selbe strâze
now was the same road

wol eines schuzzes mâze
well a shot's measure

gebrücket meisterlîche;
bridged masterfully;

dar ûf harte rîche
there upon very richly

von marmẹl ein tor gemûret lac,
of marble a gate walled lay,

des ein rat von êre pflac;
of-which a wheel of bronze took-care;

daz lief umbe vor dem tor
it ran around before the gate

ûf îsenînen siulẹn enbor.
upon iron pillars aloft.

ez treip ein wazzer daz was grôz;
it drove a water which was great;

durch daz vûle mos ez vlôz.
through the foul moor it flowed.

daz rat mit kreften umbe gie;
the wheel with strength around went;

durch daz tor ez niemen lie.
through the gate it no-one let.

daz hêt Rôaz gemeistert dar.
that had Roaz mastered there.

mit scharfen swerten was ez gar
with sharp swords was it wholly

und mit kolben wol beslagen.
and with clubs well fitted.

wer möht solhès iht an getragen
who might of-such aught on carry

daz in beschirmet vor den slegen?
which him shielded from the blows?

gegẹn dem tor hielt der degen,
toward the gate halted the thane,

wand ern mohtẹ niht vürbaz.
for he might not further.

vil vliziclîch versuohte er daz
very diligently tried he that

bî dem tore al umbe dâ;
by the gate all about there;

dône mohte er ninder anderswâ
then might he nowhere elsewhere

vür komen wan zem tor;
forth come except to-the gate;

dâ lief abe dạz rat vor
there ran but the wheel before

und huote wol der porte
and guarded well the gate

mit mangem scharfen orte.
with many-a sharp point.

dâ von sîn herze jâmer vie.
there from his heart grief caught.

er gedâhte ‘herre got, wie
he thought ‘lord God, how

sol ich nu komen in daz lant?
shall I now come into the land?

du hâst mich allez her gesant
thou hast me all hither sent

durch vil mange vreise;
through very many-a peril;

hilf mir, daz ich die reise
help me, that I the journey

volbringe als ich hân gedâht,
accomplish as I have thought,

sô hâstuz allez zende brâht
so hast-thou-it all to-the-end brought

mit gnædiclîcher güete.
with gracious goodness.

herre got, nu hüete
lord God, now guard

mîn mit dîner krefte hie!
me with thy strength here!

ichn kom in solhe vreise nie.’
I came into such peril never.’

der nebel dô widẹr ûf gie.
the mist then again up went.

Des wart der rîter niht gewar
Of-that became the knight not aware

unz daz er sich versûmte gar
until that he himself delayed wholly

daz der nebel diseḥalp sîn
so-that the mist on-this-side of-him

mit des liehten mânen schîn
with the bright moon's shine

gesteic wol zweier schefte hôch.
rose well two shafts high.

zuo der porte er dô vlôch.
to the gate he then fled.

dône mohter vür noch hinder sich;
then might-he before nor behind himself;

diu vancnüs diu was jæmerlîch,
the captivity it was wretched,

wand in da niemen lôste.
for him there no-one freed.

nu sprecht wer im ze trôste
now speak who to-him as comfort

dâ mohte komen an der stat!
there might come in the place!

vor im umbe lief daz rat,
before him around ran the wheel,

hinder im der nebel stoup,
behind him the mist drifted,

des tropfe velwet grüenez loup.
whose drop yellows green foliage.

nûne mohte er vür noch wider.
now might he forward nor back.

von sînem orse erbeizter nider
from his steed dismounted-he down

und want sîne hende.
and wrung his hands.

hie was der ellende
here was the exiled-one

gevangen âne mannes hant!
captured without man's hand!

alrêrst wart im untrôst erkant.
first-of-all became to-him despair known.

owê der nôt die er dâ vant!
alas the distress which he there found!

Dô der rîter daz ersach
When the knight that saw

daz im leit und ungemach
that to-him sorrow and distress

sô ofte an sîner vart geschach,
so often on his journey happened,

wider sich selben er dô sprach
to himself self he then spoke

'noch mac mîn wol werden rât:
'yet may of-me well become counsel:

wes got mit mir gedâht hât,
what God with me thought has,

daz muoz benamen doch geschehen;
that must assuredly yet happen;

ich wil ouch im des siges jehen.
I will also to-him of-the victory grant.

war umḅ gehabe ich mich niht wol?
why about fare I myself not well?

wan swaz mir geschehen sol,
for whatever to-me happen shall,

dazn mac doch niemen understên.'
that may yet no-one prevent.'

diu müede begunde in ane gên
the weariness began him on to-go

und der slâf nâch sîner nôt.
and the sleep after his distress.

ûf sînen arm er sich bôt
upon his arm he himself offered

an einen stein der dâ lac.
against a stone which there lay.

sîns rosses er bî dęm zoume pflac,
of-his horse he by the bridle took-care,

des swertes mit der zeswen hant.
of-the sword with the right hand.

er sprach 'herre, dir ist bekant
he spoke 'lord, to-thee is known

des mannes herze und sîn muot.
the man's heart and his mind.

du maht wol übel unde guot
thou mayst well evil and good

an mir begên, swedèrz du wil.
on me do, whichever thou wilt.

nu soltu dînes gwaltes spil,
now shalt-thou thy power's play,

herre, an mir erzeigen hie,
lord, on me show here,

wand ich dich mit herzen ie
for I thee with heart ever

in mîner jugènt geminnet hân,
in my youth loved have,

sît ich mich guotes êrst versan.
since I myself of-good first understood.

herre got, dir sî gegeben
lord God, to-thee be given

mîn vil zwîvellîchez leben
my very doubtful life

in dîne grôze erbarmicheit,
into thy great mercy,

wan du erkennèst wol herzeleit.'
for thou knowest well heart-sorrow.'

hie mit der slâf im an gestreit.
here with the sleep him on fought.

XXIV · MARRIEN

God sends a wind that drives the mist into the water and stops the wheel; Gwigalois lays a plank in it and leads his horse through, while a voice laments him as dead. In the dark a creature with a dog's head and a horse's body hurls a fire that burns his horse, shield, and surcoat but not his hauberk; he cuts off its leg, quenches the fire with its blood, and it flees. A voice on Glois tells Roaz that Marrien is slain. By moonlight Gwigalois sees Glois and its bronze pillar, guarded by two ancient knights, and goes toward the gate on foot, praying.

In dirre nôt entslief er.
In this distress fell-asleep he.

nû habt iu ze râten wer
now have to-you to guess who

im dâ kœmẹ ze trôste
to-him there came as comfort

od wer in erlôste.
or who him freed.

daz tet der süezen mâgde kint.
that did the sweet maiden's child.

von des krefte wæte ein wint;
from whose strength blew a wind;

der sluoc den nebel vaste nider
it struck the mist fast down

in daz vûle wazzer wider,
into the foul water back,

daz zer selben stunde
so-that at-the same hour

daz wazzer begunde
the water began

dicken von des nebels kraft
to-thicken from the mist's power

als vastè daz wol ein schaft
as fast that well a shaft

dạr inne bestecket wære.
there in stuck were.

got ist niht ze swære
God is nothing too heavy

noch ze grôz sîner kraft.
nor too great to-his strength.

er hât in sîner meisterschaft
he has in his mastery

alle crêatiure,
all creatures,

bœse unde tiure.
wicked and scarce.

die himel stênt in sîm gebot;
the heavens stand in his command;

aller dinge ist er got
of-all things is he God

und diu oberiste krône.
and the highest crown.

swer nâch sînem lône
whoever after his reward

gedienet, der ịst der sælden kint.
served, he is the blessedness's child.

ze trôste sande er im den wint.
as comfort sent he him the wind.

den nebel er in dạz wazzer treip,
the mist he into the water drove,

daz sîn niht vil dar obe beleip;
so-that of-it not much there above remained;

dâ von ez sîn vliezen lie.
there from it its flowing left.

daz rat dô nie mêr umbe gie;
the wheel then never more around went;

ez gestuont under dem bürgetor.
it stood-still under the castle-gate.

vil michel schal huop sich dâ vor:
very great clamor raised itself there before:

von sînem kerren daz ez tet
from its creaking which it did

der rîter spranc ûf an der stet
the knight sprang up in the place

von einem herten troume.
from a hard dream.

daz ors an dem zoume
the steed at the bridle

begunde snarchen unde streben,
began to-snort and to-strive,

wand ez entrûwẹt niht lenger leben.
for it trusted not longer to-live.

dô der rîter hêt ersehen
when the knight had seen

daz diu geschiht dâ was geschehen,
that the event there was happened,

des wart er herzenlîche vrô.
of-that became he heartily glad.

einen laden nam er dô,
a plank took he then,

der lac bî im nâhen dâ.
which lay by him near there.

in daz rat leit er in sâ
into the wheel laid he it at-once

und zôch sîn ors drüber zehant.
and drew his steed thereover at-once.

got hêt in durch daz rat gesant
God had him through the wheel sent

nâch sînem willen, als er ịn bat.
after his will, as he him begged.

dô er von dem rade getrat
when he from the wheel stepped

und sîn ors zuo im gespranc,
and his steed to him sprang,

des sagte er im vil grôzen danc
for-that said he to-him very great thanks

von des genâde ez was geschehen.
from whose grace it was happened.

dô er wolde umbe sehen
when he would around look

nâch der âventiure,
after the adventure,

dô hôrter ungehiure
then heard-he monstrous

eine stimme gegẹn im schrîen
a voice toward him cry

'owê, dîner âmîen!
'alas, for-thy beloved!

diu mac wol klagèn: du lîst hie tôt!
she may well lament: thou liest here dead!

von dînem bluote werdent rôt
from thy blood become red

und missevar die bluomen hie.'
and discolored the flowers here.'

diu stimme dô ir schrîen lie.
the voice then its crying left.

vür den mânèn ein wolken gie.
before the moon a cloud went.

Dô der starke wint gelac,
When the strong wind lay-still,

der nebel steic, als er ê pflac,
the mist rose, as it before was-wont,

ûf gegẹn dem wolken wider.
up toward the cloud again.

daz wazzer vlôz zem rade nider
the water flowed to-the wheel down

und treip ez umbe nâch sîm sit
and drove it around after its manner

hie was diu âventiure mit
here was the adventure with

beslozzen, als mir ist geseit.
locked, as to-me is told.

her Gwîgâlois mit sorgen reit
lord Gwigalois with cares rode

dô er ûf sîn ors gesaz.
when he upon his steed sat.

diu naht wart sô vinster dạz
the night became so dark that

er den wec niht mohte hân.
he the way not might have.

in dirre vinster lief in an
in this darkness ran him at

ein vremdiu crêatiure;
a strange creature;

diu bestuont in mit viure.
it withstood him with fire.

si hêt ein houbet als ein hunt,
it had a head as a dog,

lange zene, wîten munt,
long teeth, wide mouth,

diu ougen tief, viurvar;
the eyes deep, fire-colored;

niderhalp der gürtel gar
beneath the girdle wholly

hêt si eines rosses lîp.
had it a horse's body.

weder ęz man ode wîp
whether it man or woman

wære, des enweiz ich niht.
were, of-that know I not.

als uns diu âventiure giht, —
as us the adventure says,—

ob iemen daz geloubet —
if anyone that believes—

enzwischen gürtęl und houbet
between girdle and head

was si geschaffen als ein man;
was it shaped as a man;

breite schuopen wâren dran
broad scales were there-on

gewahsen herter danne ein stein;
grown harder than a stone;

die selben schuopen mohte dehein
the same scales might no

wâfen wol gesnîden.
weapon well cut.

des muosę der rîter lîden
of-that must the knight suffer

von ir grôze swære.
from its great heaviness.

waz geschepfte ez wære,
what creature it were,

desn kan ich iu niht gesagen.
of-that can I to-you not tell.

er sach si einen haven tragen,
he saw it a pot carry,

der was grôz, êrîn;
which was great, of-bronze;

mit listen was ein viuwer drîn
with cunning was a fire there-in

gemachet, sô daz bran
made, so that burned

swaz ez wart geworfen an:
whatever it became thrown at:

bein, îsen unde stein.
bone, iron and stone.

daz selbe viur mohte dehein
the same fire might no

wazzer niht erleschen sô
water not quench so

ezn brünne drinne als ein strô;
unless-it would-burn there-in as a straw;

daz selbe viur warf si in an.
the same fire threw it him at.

nu begunde dạz ors von ir dan
now began the steed from it away

sêre vlieḥẹn; des gienc im nôt,
sorely to-flee; of-that went to-it need,

wandez vorhtẹ den grimmen tôt.
for-it feared the grim death.

dô si im mangen wurf getet,
when it at-him many-a throw made,

daz ors sich an einer stet
the steed itself in a place

niht mohte enthalten, wandez bran
not might hold, for-it burned

sô sêre daz daz bluot ran
so sorely that the blood ran

von im ûf daz grüene gras.
from it onto the green grass.

dô des dehein rât was
when of-that no remedy was

sîn ors müese verbrinnen dâ,
his steed must burn there,

ûf die erde erbeizter sâ
onto the earth dismounted-he at-once

und klaget got sîne nôt.
and lamented to-God his distress.

den schilt er gegẹn dem wurfe bôt
the shield he toward the throw offered

den der vâlant ûf in tet.
which the devil upon him made.

zehant enzunde sich daz bret
at-once kindled itself the board

und verbran im von der hant;
and burned from-him from the hand;

sîn wâfenroc ouch gar verswant
his surcoat also wholly vanished

von dem selben viure.
from the same fire.

nu seht, welch âventiure
now see, what adventure

durch sînen muot er muose doln!
for his spirit he must suffer!

über einen schrit wold ich niht holn
over a step would I not fetch

den kumber und die arbeit
the grief and the toil

die er von sînem muote leit! 6985
which he from his spirit suffered!

daz sî iu vür wâr geseit.
that be to-you for true told.

Her Gwîgâlois hie blôzer stêt;
Lord Gwigalois here barer stands;

niht mê er ze schirme hêt
nothing more he for shelter had

niwan sîn barez îsengwant.
except his bare iron-clothing.

vil schiere wart im daz bekant 6990
very quickly became to-him that known

daz sînem halsberge lieht
that to-his hauberk bright

daz selbe listviuwer nieht
the same cunning-fire nothing

mohte geschaden; des wart er vrô.
might harm; of-that became he glad.

an die geschepfte lief er dô.
at the creature ran he then.

ouch was ir sô ger an in 6995
also was to-it so eager at him

daz si von dem slage hin
that it from the blow thither

niht entweich den er tet.
not gave-way which he made.

des wart ir an der selben stet
of-that became to-it in the same place

daz vierde bein abe geslagen;
the fourth leg off struck;

dazn sol niemen guoter klagen.
that shall no-one good lament.

dô dirre tievel daz hêt ersehen
when this devil that had seen

daz im der schade was geschehen,
that to-it the harm was happened,

dô warf er den haven dar
then threw it the pot there

mit dem viure ûf in gar,
with the fire upon him wholly,

daz beidiu helm und swert bran.
that both helm and sword burned.

von dem rîter woldez dan
from the knight would-it away

gevlohen sîn sâ zehant.
fled be straightway at-once.

dô wart im mit voller hant
then became to-it with full hand

geslagẹn ein tiefiu wunde.
struck a deep wound.

von sînem bluote begunde
from its blood began

daz viur erleschen dâ ez bran
the fire to-go-out where it burned

swâ ez kom gesprungen an.
wherever it came sprung on.

dô des der rîter wart gewar,
when of-that the knight became aware,

nâch dem bluote greif er dar
after the blood grasped he there

dâ ez bî im swebte;
where it by him hovered;

swâ daz viuwer klebte,
wherever the fire stuck,

daz bluot er dar an streich;
the blood he there on smeared;

zehant daz viur dâ von entweich.
at-once the fire there from gave-way.

sus ernerte sich der degen:
thus saved himself the thane:

und hêt sîn got niht gepflegen,
and had of-him God not taken-care,

er wær ze tôde dâ verbrant.
he were to death there burned.

von im vlôch der vâlant,
from him fled the devil,

beidiu man unde ros,
both man and horse,

gegẹn dem nebel ûf daz mos
toward the mist onto the moor

und gal sô vreislîche
and yelled so fearfully

daz daz ertrîche
that the earth

nâch im hal dâ er lief.
after it echoed where it ran.

ûf Glois dô ein stimme rief
on Glois then a voice called

‘wâ nû, Rôaz! dîn êre ist tôt.
‘where now, Roaz! thy honor is dead.

hœrst du niht Marrîên nôt,
hearest thou not Marrien’s distress,

der mit sînem viure
who with his fire

pflac der âventiure
kept the adventure

alle naht? den hœre ich klagen;
all night? him hear I lament;

ich wæne wol er ist erslagen.
I believe well he is slain.

diu âventiure diu ist entrant,
the adventure it is undone,

wan dir ist komen in daz lant
for to-thee is come into the land

der dich ganzes strîtes wert,
who thee of-whole strife grants,

des du ie hâst gegert.
of-which thou ever hast desired.

sît Marrîên erslagen ist,
since Marrien slain is,

daz in aller sîn list
so-that him all his cunning

vor dem tôde niht mohte ernern,
from the death not might save,

sô muostu dich vil kecke wern,
so must-thou thyself very boldly defend,

od du verliusèst dîn schœne wîp,
or thou losest thy beautiful wife,

êre, guot und ouch den lîp.
honor, goods and also the life.

ez mac dir wol ze schaden komen
it may to-thee well to harm come

daz du den strît dir hâst genomen
that thou the fight to-thee hast taken

ze vehten wider in eine.
to fight against him alone.

wir müezen alle gemeine
we must all in-common

im dienstes wesen undertân,
to-him in-service be subject,

gesigt er dînen listen an,
(if)-conquers he thy cunning on,

wan des hâstu ie gesworn.
for that hast-thou ever sworn.

helt, nu rich dînen zorn,
hero, now avenge thy anger,

od du hâst guot und lîp verlorn!'
or thou hast goods and life lost!'

Nâch dirre redè diu stimme sweic.
After this speech the voice fell-silent.

der mâne ûz von dem wolken steic
the moon out from the cloud rose

und wart sîn schîn lûter gar.
and became its shine clear wholly.

dô nam der rîter umb sich war
then took the knight about himself heed

wie daz lant wære getân;
how the land were made;

dô sach er Glois vor im stân.
then saw he Glois before him stand.

daz was ein schœne kastel
that was a beautiful castle

hôch, wît und sinwel,
high, wide and round,

gemûrt mit grôzem vlîze wol.
walled with great diligence well.

von marmel swarz als ein kol
of marble black as a coal

wâren gepfîlært dâ vor
were pillared there before

in die burc zwei wîtiu tor;
into the castle two wide gates;

daz ander teil der mûre was
the other part of-the wall was

rôt, grüene als ein gras,
red, green as a grass,

von marmelsteine gezieret,
of marble adorned,

mit golde geparrieret,
with gold embellished,

gelûtert als ein agstein.
polished as an amber.

swâ der mâne dar an schein,
wherever the moon there on shone,

dâ glaste sị als ein spiegelglas.
there gleamed it as a mirror-glass.

vür daz tor gesetzet was
before the gate set was

ein grôziu sûl von êre;
a great pillar of bronze;

dien vint man ninder mêre
it finds one nowhere more

in der werlte anderswâ
in the world elsewhere

niwan in Korinthîâ:
except in Corinth:

der êre ist rehte lûter gar
the bronze is right clear wholly

als der regenboge gevar,
as the rainbow colored,

daz man sich drinne möhte ersehen;
so-that one oneself there-in might see;

des muoz man den heiden jehen
of-that must one to-the heathens grant

grôzes listes ze Korntîn.
great cunning at Korntin.

oben was ein rubîn
above was a ruby

dạrinné beworht als ein huot;
there-in wrought as a hat;

des schîn was ze sehen guot
whose shine was to see good

und gap dem herzen wünne.
and gave to-the heart delight.

als ein stern dâ brünne,
as-if a star there would-burn,

sô brehẹnde er zallen stunden;
so shone it at-all hours;

mit goldẹ was er gebunden.
with gold was it bound.

des huoten zwêne rîter dâ,
it guarded two knights there,

die wârẹn beide von alter grâ,
who were both from age gray,

baz danne hundert jâr alt;
more than hundred years old;

ir berte wâren wol gestalt,
their beards were well shaped,

lanc, dic, ze mâze breit,
long, thick, in measure broad,

ir hâr gevlohten unde reit,
their hair braided and curly,

mit borten wol bewunden.
with braids well wound.

die huoten zallen stunden
they guarded at-all hours

der siule undẹr einer linden;
the pillar under a linden;

sine mohte niemen vinden
them might no-one find

âne wer ze dẹheiner zît;
without defense at any time;

si wâren ie bereit ûf strît
they were ever ready for fight

und huoten ouch der porte
and guarded also the gate

mit ir scharfem orte
with their sharp point

beidiu naht unde tac.
both night and day.

dô im diu burc sô nâhen lac
when to-him the castle so near lay

und er die zwêne rîter sach
and he the two knights saw

wider sich selben er dô sprach
to himself self he then spoke

'wes sol ich hie nu lenger stên?
'why shall I here now longer stand?

ich wil gegẹn der bürge gên
I will toward the castle go

sît ich mîn ors nu hân verlorn;
since I my steed now have lost;

daz ist unwendic, nu sîz verkorn!'
that is unavoidable, now be-it forgone!'

sus gienc er gegẹn dem bürgetor.
thus went he toward the castle-gate.

sîne hende habtèr enbor
his hands held-he aloft

und sach vil tiure hin ze got.
and looked very earnestly thither to God.

er sprach 'herrè, nâch dîm gebot
he spoke 'lord, after thy command

wil ich sêle unde leben
will I soul and life

in dîne erbarmunge geben,
into thy mercy give,

daz du mir ruochèst ze helfen hie;
that thou me deign to help here;

swaz ich hân gestriten ie,
whatever I have fought ever,

daz tet ich âne meisterschaft,
that did I without mastery,

bärlîch mit dîner kraft;
plainly with thy strength;

nu hilf mir, herrè, des ist mir nôt,
now help me, lord, of-that is to-me need,

daz die liehtèn bluomen rôt
that the bright flowers red

mîn bluot iht rœter mache;
my blood not redder make;

daz mînes tôdẹs iht lache
that of-my death not laugh

diu ungetriuwe heidenschaft.
the faithless heathendom.

nu hilf mir, herrè, mit dîner kraft,
now help me, lord, with thy strength,

daz ich gesigè dem heiden an;
that I conquer the heathen on;

sô hâstu wol ze mir getân
so hast-thou well to me done

und ouch volendet mîne gir.
and also accomplished my desire.

herre got, des hilf du mir;
lord God, of-that help thou me;

sô wil ich immer dienen dir.'
so will I ever serve thee.'

Seizing a shield from the wall, Gwigalois kills one old guardian and spares the other, who becomes his man and promises him the maiden and the lands if he defeats the heathen. At the ring's touch the gate opens on a palace of gold and gems; twelve maidens with candles lead him in, and Roaz comes armed, with a devil before him in a cloud, kept off by the letter tied to Gwigalois's sword and the sign of the cross. Roaz's arms are described, and his wife Japhite follows with her maidens and minstrels, in a mantle woven by salamanders in a burning mountain of Asia.

Zuo den alten er dô gie.
To the old-ones he then went.

die hêten sich gewâfent hie
they had themselves armed here

und sâzẹn ûf einer grêde.
and sat upon a step.

der herren schilte bêde
the lords' shields both

die hiengen an der mûre enbor
they hung on the wall aloft

an zwein nageln vor dem tor.
on two nails before the gate.

sus kom der junge rîter dar,
thus came the young knight thither,

daz ir dẹwedèr des wart gewar,
so-that of-them neither of-that became aware,

unz er den næhsten schilt gevienc,
until he the nearest shield seized,

der an der mûre bî im hienc.
which on the wall by him hung.

zehant als er den schilt begreif,
at-once when he the shield gripped,

sîn sorge im ein teil entsleif
his care to-him a part slipped-away

und gewan ze strîte vesten muot;
and gained for fight firm spirit;

der schilt was im ze schirmen guot.
the shield was to-him for shielding good.

des wurdẹn die rîter vil unvrô;
of-that became the knights very unglad;

mit grôzem nîde liefen dô
with great hatred ran then

dise zwêne küene man
these two bold men

mit ganzer kunst den einen an
with whole art the one at

und tribẹn in von der porte nider.
and drove him from the gate down.

her Gwîgâlois der sluoc wider
lord Gwigalois he struck back

under wîlen nâch sîner maht.
at times after his might.

mit listen er sus mit in vaht:
with cunning he thus with them fought:

er schirmet mange wîle;
he fenced many-a while;

dar nâch sluoc er mit île,
there after struck he with haste,

daz sîn swert vil ofte erklanc
that his sword very often rang

und daz ûz den helmen spranc
and that out-of the helms sprang

daz viuwer zallen stunden.
the fire at-all hours.

der eine im eine wunden
the one to-him a wound

durch den liehten helm sluoc.
through the bright helm struck.

den slac er im dô niht vertruoc:
the blow he to-him then not endured:

den schilt begunder vazzen baz
the shield began-he to-grasp better

und trat sô nâhen zuo im daz
and stepped so near to him that

er in wol mohte erreichen;
he him well might reach;

daz swert begunder sleichen
the sword began-he to-creep

under sînem schilte hin
under his shield thither

und stach im dâ zem gêren in
and stabbed him there at-the gusset in

eine wunden diu was wît,
a wound which was wide,

daz er dar nâch in kurzer zît
so-that he there after in short time

tôter viel ûf daz gras.
dead fell onto the grass.

der ander des vil vlîzic was
the other of-that very diligent was

daz er geræche sînen tôt:
that he should-avenge his death:

den schilt er allez vür sich bôt
the shield he ever before himself offered

und sluoc ûf in sô vaste
and struck upon him so fast

daz daz viuwer glaste
that the fire gleamed

gegẹn des liehten mânen schîn
toward the bright moon's shine

und daz daz rat guldîn
and that the wheel golden

vil mange scharten dâ enpfie.
very many notches there received.

mit slegen er dô ûf in gie,
with blows he then upon him went,

als in sîn ellen lêrte;
as him his valor taught;

daz bluot vil vaste rêrte
the blood very fast shed

der jungẹ mit starken wunden.
the young-one with strong wounds.

als er der hêt enpfunden,
when he them had felt,

der alte sprach 'nu lât mich leben!
the old-one spoke 'now let me live!

ich wil iu sichern unde geben
I will to-you pledge and give

mînen lîp in iuwẹr gebot
my body into your command

und swer iu bî ḍẹm oberisten got
and swear to-you by the highest God

daz ich iu diene die wîle ich lebe;
that I you serve the while I live;

und lât ir mir daz zeiner gebe,
and (if)-let you me that as-a gift,

edel rîter, von iu hân,
noble knight, from you have,

sô wil ich werden iuwer man
so will I become your man

und wil iu leisten triuwe
and will to-you perform faith

immer âne riuwe.'
ever without rue.'

der rîter sprach 'daz sî getân!'
the knight spoke 'that be done!'

vür in begunde der alte man
before him began the old man

vallen balde ûf sîniu knie.
to-fall quickly upon his knees.

in sîne gnâde er in enpfie
into his grace he him received

und kusṭen ein ander beide.
and kissed one other both.

diu swert si in die scheide
the swords they into the sheath

mit ganzem vride stiezen;
with whole peace thrust;

mit triuwen si gehiezen
with faith they promised

ein ander rehte geselleschaft.
one other right companionship.

diu hêt stæte und ganze kraft
it had steadfastness and whole strength

under in beiḍen unz an ir tôt.
between them both until to their death.

der alte sprach 'iuwer nôt
the old-one spoke 'your distress

diu ist noch unverendet;
it is yet unended;

gît got daz hie geschendet
(if)-gives God that here disgraces

den heiden iuwer manheit,
the heathen your manhood,

sô habt ir âne arbeit
so have you without toil

daz lant immer mêre,
the land ever more,

liute, guot und êre;
people, goods and honor;

dar zuo gît man iu die maget,
there to gives one to-you the maiden,

von der schœne man wunder saget,
of whose beauty one wonder tells,

der disiu lant solden sîn,
to-whom these lands should be,

Glois unde Korntîn.
Glois and Korntin.

mit gewalte ez ir benomen ist;
with violence it from-her taken is;

habt ir nu kraft und guoten list,
have you now strength and good cunning,

des wirt iu benamen nôt;
of-that becomes to-you assuredly need;

ir sult iuch wern, od ir sît tôt.'
you shall yourselves defend, or you are dead.'

des volgęt er im sît erz gebôt.
of-that followed he him since he-it commanded.

Er sprach 'herre, nu sît gemant,
He spoke 'lord, now be reminded,

welt ir die maget und daz lant
will you the maiden and the land

erwerben hie, daz ir iuch wert.
win here, that you yourselves defend.

ist daz iuch gót hìe ernert,
is that you God here saves,

sô habt ir iuwer arbeit
so have you your toil

vil sæliclîche an geleit.
very blessedly on laid.

ich sagiu daz vür dise stat
I tell-you that before this place

dehein rîter nie getrat
no knight ever stepped

nâch strîte durch daz bürgetor:
after fight through the castle-gate:

man vant ie strîtes gnuoc dâ vor
one found ever of-strife enough there before

von uns unz an dise stunt.
from us until to this hour.

nu ist er tôt und bin ich wunt;
now is he dead and am I wounded;

daz ist uns von iu geschehen.
that is to-us from you happened.

ich wil iu gerne siges jehen,
I will to-you gladly of-victory grant,

wand ir sît aller êren wert,
for you are of-all honors worth,

der iuch got wol hât gewert,
which you God well has granted,

ob ir in der burc gesiget.
if you in the castle conquer.

ist ab daz ir dâ tôt geliget,
is but that you there dead lie,

sô habt ir michel arbeit
so have you great toil

verlorn in iuwer kintheit.'
lost in your childhood.'

sus sâzen si dâ bêde
thus sat they there both

durch ruowe ûf einer grêde
for rest upon a step

unz si gewunnen niuwe maht.
until they won new might.

ditz was wol nâch mitter naht.
this was well after mid night.

her Gwîgâlois zem alten sprach,
lord Gwigalois to-the old-one spoke,

dô er die burc beslozzen sach
when he the castle locked saw

'wer entsliuzet mir daz tor?
'who unlocks for-me the gate?

mich dunkẹt, ich sî ze langẹ ḥie vor;
to-me seems, I be too long here before;

mîner vreude wil ich ende geben,
to-my joy will I end give,

od mit vreuden lenger leben;
or with joys longer live;

des helfet mir, sô sît ir guot.'
for-that help me, so are you good.'

er sprach 'ich sagiu waz ir tuot:
he spoke 'I tell-you what you do:

nu rüeręt den rinc mit der hant;
now touch the ring with the hand;

sâ sô wirt iu daz bekant
at-once so becomes to-you that known

waz innerhalp der porte ist.'
what inside the gate is.'

dô sûmte er sich unlange vrist;
then delayed he himself not-long span;

urloup nam er von im dâ.
leave took he from him there.

den rinc begunder rüeren sâ
the ring began-he to-touch at-once
sô vaste daz diu burc erhal.
so fast that the castle resounded.
zehant huop sich sô grôzer schal
at-once raised itself so great clamor
als al diu werlt dâ brünne;
as-if all the world there would-burn;
ez was dehein wünne
there was no delight
in dem hûse noch dâ vor;
in the house nor there before;
mit zorne slôz man ûf daz tor.
with anger opened one up the gate.
dô daz her Gwîgâlois ersach,
when that lord Gwigalois saw,
vil herzenlîche er dô sprach
very heartily he then spoke
und tet daz kriuze dâ vür sich
and made the cross there before himself
'herre got, behüete mich
'lord God, guard me
und wis mîn geleite hie!'
and be my escort here!'
in die burc er dô gie;
into the castle he then went;
baz gezierde gesach er nie.
better adornment saw he never.

In sîner nôt nam er des war
In his distress took he of-that heed

daz diu mûre innen gar
that the wall inside wholly

gegẹn im von rôtem golde schein
toward him of red gold shone

und daz vil manic edel stein
and that very many-a noble stone

gegẹn dem andern glaste;
toward the other gleamed;

sus gleiz ez allez vaste:
thus glittered it all fast:

die steine gegẹn dem golde nider,
the stones toward the gold down,

und daz golt gegẹn in wider.
and the gold toward them back.

daz was guot ougen weide;
that was good eyes' pasture;

in allem sînem leide
in all his sorrow

die gezierde er gerne sach.
the adornment he gladly saw.

zehant ein blic vor im geschach,
at-once a flash before him happened,

der lûhte rehte alsam dẹr tac;
which shone right as the day;

nâch dem blicke kom ein slac
after the flash came a crash

als diu burc in einer var
as-if the castle in one go

zesamne wolde bresten gar,
together would burst wholly,

und wart sô vinster umḅ die want
and became so dark about the wall

daz er vor im sîne hant
that he before him his hand

niht wol mohte gekiesen.
not well might make-out.

den lîp wânder verliesen
the life believed-he to-lose

in dem selben schalle dâ.
in the same clamor there.

sîn schœnez swert vuorter sâ
his beautiful sword carried-he at-once

und stuont ze wer als ein ber.
and stood at defense as a bear.

dar nâch giengen gegẹn im her
there after went toward him hither

zwelf mägde sûberlîch;
twelve maidens neat;

der selben mägde ieslîch
of-the same maidens each

truoc ein kerzèn, diu vaste bran;
carried a candle, which fast burned;

vil guotiu kleider hêtens an
very good garments had-they on

von bunt und von samîte,
of parti-color and of samite,

an ietwederre sîte
on each side

geteilet gel unde rôt.
divided yellow and red.

ir gruoz im dâ deheiniu bôt;
their greeting to-him there none offered;

si stuonden nebẹn ein ander dâ.
they stood beside one other there.

von den liehten gesach er sâ.
from the lights saw he at-once.

ein palas wart dâ ûf getân,
a palace became there up opened,

dar în die mägde begunden gân,
there into the maidens began to-go,

daz was schœne und sô wît
that was beautiful and so wide

daz er vordes noch sît
that he before nor afterward

schœner palas nie gesach;
more-beautiful palace never saw;

dar în gienc in der rîter nâch
there into went them the knight after

und als er zuo in wolde gân,
and when he to them would go,

eine porte sach er offen stân
a gate saw he open stand

von im wol eines wurfes lanc;
from him well a throw long;

dar ûz Rôaz gewâfent dranc.
there out-of Roaz armed pressed.

vor im mit zoubẹr ein wolken gie;
before him with magic a cloud went;

daz wolken sâhen alle die
the cloud saw all those

vor im giengen unde nâch;
before him went and after;

her Gwîgâlois sîn niht ensach.
lord Gwigalois it not saw.

dar inne vuor er der sîn pflac
there in fared he who of-him took-care

beidiu naht unde tac
both night and day

und dem er sêle unde leben
and to-whom he soul and life

in sîn gebot hêt gegeben.
into his command had given.

daz was ein tievel, der im ie
that was a devil, who him ever

half unde riet wie
helped and counseled how

er im verlür die sêle gar.
he from-him should-lose the soul wholly.

ûf den gedingen kom er dar
upon the hope came he thither

daz si im würde âne strît,
that it to-him should-become without strife,

wan des dûhte in michel zît.
for of-that seemed to-him great time.

dô wândẹ Rôaz er wolde im dâ
then believed Roaz he would him there

helfen als er anderswâ
help as he elsewhere

mit sînen listen hêt getân:
with his cunning had done:

dô was gewarnẹt der junge man
then was warned the young man

mit einem brieve, der im wart
with a letter, which to-him became

gestricket an sîner vart
tied on his journey

umb sîn swert mit gebet,
about his sword with prayer,

und mit dem kriuze, daz er tet
and with the cross, which he made

vür sich dô er zem tor în gie.
before himself when he at-the gate in went.

dâ von getorstę der tievel nie
there from dared the devil never

zuo im komen nâher baz.
to him come nearer more.

vil sêre schûhtę der heiden daz;
very sorely shied the heathen that;

iedoch was er sô manhaft
yet was he so manly

daz er wol mit sîner kraft
that he well with his strength

vor in beiden trûwęt genesen,
before them both trusted to-survive,

ob ir zwêne wærn gewesen.
if of-them two were been.

dâ überdâhte er sich an,
there overthought he himself on,

wand ez gesigt ein kurzer man
for it conquers a short man

vil oft mit kunst an einem der
very often with art over one who

spannen lenger ist dan er.
a-span longer is than he.

ze strîte was in beiden ger.
for fight was to-them both eager.

Beslozzen wurden dô die tür.
Locked became then the doors.

Rôaz der gie gewâfent vür,
Roaz he went armed forth,

michel als ein gîgant.
great as a giant.

ein swert truoc er in der hant
a sword carried he in the hand

des ecke nâch dem tôde sneit;
whose edge after the death cut;

daz was wol einer spannen breit.
that was well a span broad.

einen schilt er ze schirme[n] truoc,
a shield he for shielding carried,

dâ hêt ein man an genuoc
there had a man in-it enough

ze tragen übern rücke;
to carry over-the back;

er wære zeiner brücke
it were for-a bridge

gnuoc starc geweseṇ übeṛ einen bach;
enough strong been over a brook;

daṛ an er gemâlet sach,
there on he painted saw,

als der wirt wolde,
as the host would,

von lâzûre und von golde
of azure and of gold

einen tracken vreislîch;
a dragon fearful;

von golde was ein buckel rîch
of gold was a boss rich

und von gesteine drûf geslagen.
and of gems there-on struck.

den moht er mit êren tragen;
it might he with honors carry;

ze strîte was er wol bereit.
for fight was he well ready.

eine brünje hêt er an geleit
a byrnie had he on laid

übẹr einen wîzen halsberc,
over a white hauberk,

daz was heidenischez werc
that was heathenish work

von breiten blechen hürnîn;
of broad plates of-horn;

mit golde wârn geleit dar în
with gold were laid there in

rubîn und manic edel stein,
rubies and many-a noble stone,

der glast dâ wider eịn ander schein,
the gleam there against one other shone,

saphîre und berillen.
sapphires and beryls.

er hêt nâch sînem willen
he had after his will

einen helm herter danne ein glas,
a helm harder than a glass,

der ouch des selben stâles was
which also of-the same steel was

ûz der innern Indîâ,
out-of the inner India,

als diu glävîe die er dâ
as the lance which he there

in dem wurme stecken lie.
in the serpent stick let.

umḅ den helm ein lîste gie
about the helm a border went

von golde zweier vinger breit;
of gold two fingers broad;

oben was dạr in geleit
above was there in laid

mit gesmelze ein adamas;
with enamel a diamond;

von golde drûf gemeistert was
of gold there-on wrought was

ein tracke als er lebte
a dragon as-if it lived

und ob dem helme swebte.
and above the helm hovered.

sîn îsenhosen die wârn guot.
his iron-hose they were good.

sîn herze hêt eins lewen muot
his heart had a lion's mind

ze mänlîchem strîte.
to manly fight.

sîn wîp, diu vrouwẹ Japhîte,
his wife, the lady Japhite,

nâch im mit hôhem muote gie;
after him with high spirit went;

vor ir zwelf mägde, die
before her twelve maidens, who

wâren sûberlîch genuoc.
were neat enough.

eine kerzen ir ieslîchiu truoc,
a candle of-them each carried,

grôz, gwunden, diu vaste bran.
great, wound, which fast burned.

guotiu kleider hêtens an
good garments had-they on

von pfelle, roc unde dach;
of brocade, coat and cover;

gefurrieret man darunder sach
lined one there-under saw

lûter veder die wârn bunt.
pure furs which were parti-colored.

grôziu swærẹ was in unkunt
great heaviness was to-them unknown

und der wunsch geteilet sô
and the ideal divided so

daz si von schulde wâren vrô.
that they by right were glad.

ir zobel wâren rîche;
their sables were rich;

ie zwô und zwô gelîche
ever two and two alike

nebẹn ein ander giengen.
beside one other went.

über die mäntel hiengen
over the mantles hung

ir zöpfe verre hin zetal,
their braids far thither down,

wol bewunden über al
well wound over all

mit borten und mit sîden.
with ribbons and with silk.

swer von in solde lîden
whoever from them should suffer

trûten unde minne,
caressing and love,

dem wæren sîne sinne
to-him were his wits

wol getiuret dâ von.
well ennobled there from.

armuot wârens ungewon:
poverty were-they unaccustomed:

ez schein wol an ir rîchen wât
it showed well in their rich clothing

daz dehein unrât
that no want

ir deheiniu nie gewan.
of-them any never won.

ie neben zwein ein spilman
ever beside two a minstrel

vil süeze videlunde gie,
very sweetly fiddling went,

der dẹheiner dem andern nie
of-whom any to-the other never

einen grif übersach.
a grip overlooked.

zaller jungest gie dar nâch
at-all last went there after

diu schœne vrouwẹ Japhîte.
the beautiful lady Japhite.

daz was gar ûz dem strîte
that was wholly out-of the dispute

sine wær diu schœnest under in.
unless-she were the most-beautiful among them.

einen mantel truoc si zobelîn,
a mantle wore she of-sable,

bedaht mit einem pfelle,
covered with a brocade,

den hêt ir ir geselle
which had to-her her companion

verre brâht über sê;
far brought over sea;

die würme Salamandrê
the serpents Salamander

worhtẹn in in dem viure;
wrought it in the fire;

dâ von was er tiure
there from was it scarce

und müelîch ze gwinnen
and laborious to win

andern küniginnen.
for-other queens.

ir muoter was der selbe berc
its mother was the same mountain

dâ noch daz sîdîne werc
where yet the silken work

die würme Salamandrê
the serpents Salamander

inne würkent alsam ê.
inside work as before.

der berc ist hol unde wît,
the mountain is hollow and wide,

mit kreften brinnet er zaller zît
with strength burns it at-all time

in der grôzen Asîâ.
in the great Asia.

dem wurme Salamandrâ
to-the serpent Salamander

durch sîn wunder hât got gegeben
for its wonder has God given

in dem viure ein vremdez leben,
in the fire a strange life,

als wirz an den buochen lesen.
as we-it in the books read.

niht lebẹndes drinne mac genesen,
nothing living there-in may survive,

ezn verbrinne ze pulver gar;
unless-it burn to powder wholly;

des habt ir ofte genomen war.
of-that have you often taken heed.

ditz mære sage ich iu vür wâr.
this tale tell I to-you for true.

XXVI · THE DEATH OF ROAZ

Japhite watches from a dais, since Roaz has forbidden all help. Roaz beats Gwigalois to his knees before the ladies, but the sight of them restores his strength, and the poet speaks of ladies' love. Wounded in the leg, Roaz limps, and they fight through the night until Gwigalois runs him through the breast. Japhite's heart bursts as she embraces his body; she tears her hair, reproaches Mahomet for leaving her, and tells Roaz that his death shall be hers.

Sus kom diu vrouwe Japhîte
Thus came the lady Japhite

zuo ir vriundes strîte
to her beloved's fight

gegangen harte schône.
gone very beautifully.

eine guldîne krône
a golden crown

truoc diu vrouwe hêre.
wore the lady noble.

an ir was vrouwen êre
in her was ladies' honor

und ganziu triuwe veste.
and whole faith firm.

deheiner slahte gebreste,
of-no kind lack,

der ie an deheinem wîbe wart,
which ever on any woman became,

des was ir lîp vil wol bewart,
from-that was her body very well guarded,

wan daz sị ungetoufet was;
except that she unbaptized was;

lûter als ein spiegelglas
clear as a mirror-glass

was si vor anderm meine.
was she from other falseness.

vrouwẹ Japhîte diu reine
lady Japhite the pure

ûf eine hôhe brücke saz,
upon a high platform sat,

daz nie dehein brücke baz
than-which never any platform better

von betten wart geslihtet,
with beds became smoothed,

mit tepten wol berihtet,
with carpets well arranged,

und mit liehten pfellen.
and with bright brocades.

dô sach si ir gesellen
then saw she her companion

gewâfent gegẹn dem gaste gên.
armed toward the guest go.

die mägde hiez si hôher stên
the maidens bade she higher stand

alle nebẹn ein ander dâ.
all beside one other there.

sus huop sich der strît sâ
thus raised itself the fight at-once

under den herren beiden.
between the lords both.

geboten hêt der heiden
commanded had the heathen

allen den sînen daz
to-all the his that

benamen bî ir lîbe, swaz
assuredly by their life, whatever

im geschaden möhte ein man,
to-him harm might a man,

swâ si daz möhten understân
wherever they that might prevent

mit werken od mit ræten,
with works or with counsels,

daz si des niht entæten.
that they of-that nothing should-do.

ouch was diu vrouwe Japhîte
also was the lady Japhite

niht strenge an dem strîte
not stubborn in the strife

swaz er ze lâzen ir gebôt:
whatever he to leave her commanded:

ê wær si gelegen tôt,
rather were she lain dead,

swaz er si lâzen hieze,
whatever he her leave should-bid,

ê si daz niht enlieze.
before she that not should-leave.

daz wær ouch noch guot wîbes sit,
that were also yet good women's custom,

daz si iht harte wider strit
that they not hard against strive

und daz mit willen tæte
and that with will should-do

swes si ir vriunt gebæte,
whatever them their beloved should-beg,

sô belibe ir minne stæte.
so would-remain their love steadfast.

Rôaz mit zorne zuo im gie;
Roaz with anger to him went;

unminniclîche er in enpfie
unlovingly he him received

ûf den schilt mit starken slegen.
upon the shield with strong blows.

dô ẹntweich im der werde degen
then gave-way to-him the worthy thane

mit scherme allez ûf den sal.
with fencing all up-to the hall.

ouch sluoc er daz der helm erschal
also struck he that the helm resounded

under wîlen, als er mohte.
at times, as he might.

swen im sîn slahen tohte,
whenever to-him his striking availed,

sô sluoc er, daz der schiltes rant
so struck he, that the shield's rim

sich vil vaste unz ûf die hant
itself very fast until up-to the hand

kloup engegẹn der buckel nider.
split toward the boss down.

sô treip in abe dẹr heiden wider
so drove him off the heathen back

mit starken slegen gegẹn der tür.
with strong blows toward the door.

sus entweich er wider unde vür
thus gave-way he back and forth

mit listen vür die vrouwen.
with cunning before the ladies.

die schilte wurdẹn zehouwen
the shields became hewn

vil sêre von in beiden.
very sorely by them both.

sin getorste niemen scheiden,
them dared no-one part,

noch dar zuo gesprechẹn ein wort,
nor there to speak a word,

wan der wære gewesen mort
for that-one were been murdered

von im, des hêt er gesworn.
by him, of-that had he sworn.

den selben strît hêt er erkorn
the same fight had he chosen

im ze vehten eine.
for-himself to fight alone.

vrouwẹ Japhîte diu reine
lady Japhite the pure

klagtẹ des jungen rîters nôt.
lamented the young knight's distress.

si was gewis daz im der tôt
she was certain that to-him the death

dâ von ir vriunde wære beschert.
there from her beloved were destined.

und ist daz er sich des erwert,
and is that he himself of-that defends,

sô hât ir huotẹ diu sælicheit
so has their keeping the blessedness

mit vlîze wol an in geleit,
with diligence well on him laid,

wan sô hât der rîter gar
for so has the knight wholly

swaz im leides ie gewar
whatever him of-sorrow ever troubled

mit liebe überwunden
with joy overcome

und ganze vreude vunden.
and whole joy found.

des was ab si gar âne wân,
of-that was but she wholly without hope,

wan der künic Rôaz, ir man,
for the king Roaz, her husband,

was ein helt ze sîner hant;
was a hero to his hand;

sînen gelîchen niemen vant
his like no-one found

über al die heidenschaft;
over all the heathendom;

er hêt mänlîche kraft
he had manly strength

und ganze kunst ze strîte;
and whole art for fight;

des sluoc er wunden wîte;
of-that struck he wounds wide;

dâ von wart manger sigelôs
there from became many-a-one victoryless

der sînen lîp von im verlôs.
who his life from him lost.

er was gar âne triuwe;
he was wholly without faith;

sîn herze dâ von riuwe
his heart there from rue

und vil grôze swære gevie,
and very great heaviness caught,

swen ẹr ze guote iht begie;
whenever he to good aught did;

grimmes muotes was er vol.
of-grim mind was he full.

daz erzeigẹt er disem rîter wol,
that showed he to-this knight well,

wand er mit slegen ûf in gie.
for he with blows upon him went.

er sluoc in daz er an diu knie
he struck him that he onto the knees

kom vor vrouwẹn Japhîten.
came before lady Japhite.

ditz was ein hertez strîten,
this was a hard fighting,

wandez muose gẹlten gar,
for-it must pay wholly,

swaz si beide brâhten dar:
whatever they both brought thither:

den lîp, guot und êre.
the life, goods and honor.

her Gwîgâlois vil sêre
lord Gwigalois very sorely

sich schamen des begunde
himself to-be-ashamed of-that began

und spranc ûf an der stunde,
and sprang up at the hour,

als ez im nie wære geschehen.
as-if it to-him never were happened.

die vrouwen begunder an sehen;
the ladies began-he on to-look;

der schœne gap im solhe maht
the beauty gave him such might

daz er abèr mit kreften vaht.
that he again with strength fought.

dâ von wil ich den vrouwen jehen,
there from will I to-the ladies grant,

daz ir minniclîchez sehen
that their lovely looking

des mannes herze enzündet;
the man's heart kindles;

ir grôziu schœne schündet
their great beauty urges

ûf aller slahte vrümicheit,
toward of-all kinds valor,

ze tugent und ze manheit.
to virtue and to manhood.

daz hœre ich die vrumen sagen,
that hear I the valiant say,

die von in dicke müezen tragen
who from them often must bear

grôze liebe und herzeleit.
great love and heart-sorrow.

mîn lop wær in baz bereit,
my praise were to-them better ready,

wær mir ir heimlîche bekant;
were to-me their intimacy known;

sus schrîb ich mit vremder hant,
thus write I with strange hand,

als der mit golde umbe gêt
as he-who with gold about goes

des in niht grûzwert bestêt.
of-which to-him not grit's-worth belongs.

wær ich ein sô werder kneht
were I a so worthy fellow

daz mir ir güete und ir reht
that to-me their goodness and their right

baz kunt würde getân,
better known should-become made,

sô schribe ich baz dan ich noch hân;
so would-write I better than I yet have;

des sint si sus von mir erlân.
of-that are they thus by me spared.

Nâch vrouwen minne lît manger tôt;
After ladies' love lies many-a-one dead;

si vüegent jâmer unde nôt,
they bring grief and distress,

herzeliebe und herzeleit.
heart's-love and heart-sorrow.

dise rîter wârn bereit
these knights were ready

ze dienen nâch ir hulden.
to serve after their favor.

der heiden tet ẹz von schulden,
the heathen did it by right,

wand er hêt ein schœne wîp;
for he had a beautiful wife;

dirre liez ab sînen lîp
this-one let but his body

bliuwen und zehouwen
be-beaten and be-hewn

durch sîne liebe vrouwen,
for his dear lady,

die schœnen magt Lârîen,
the beautiful maiden Larie,

die er zeiner âmîen
whom he as-a beloved

sînem lîbe hêt erkorn
for-his body had chosen

ist daz ez dâ niht wirt verlorn.
(if)-is that it there not becomes lost.

daz bewarte ouch er vil vaste.
that guarded also he very fast.

der heiden von dem gaste
the heathen from the guest

eine wunden in ein bein enpfie
a wound in a leg received

diu im an daz herze gie,
which to-him to the heart went,

dâ von er an der stunde
there from he at the hour

vil sêre hinken begunde.
very sorely to-limp began.

dô daz sîn schœne wîp ersach,
when that his beautiful wife saw,

von grôzem leide ir herze brach;
from great sorrow her heart broke;

ir swære begunde stîgen
her heaviness began to-rise

und ir vreude sîgen;
and her joy to-sink;

ir schœnẹ verwandelt sich dâ gar;
her beauty changed itself there wholly;

ir antlütze wart missevar,
her face became discolored,

daz ê in hôhem [gẹ]müete
which before in high [m]ind

baz danne ein rôse blüete.
better than a rose bloomed.

ir swære daz bescheinde
her heaviness that showed

daz sị in mit triuwen meinde;
that she him with faith meant;

diu ougẹn ir über liefen;
the eyes to-her over ran;

vil mangen siuften tiefen
very many-a sigh deep

den nam si ûf von herzen
it took she up from heart

umb ir gesellen smerzen;
for her companion's pain;

der tet ir inniclîche wê.
it did her inwardly woe.

dise zwêne rîtẹr als ê
these two knights as before

ein ander vaste umbe triben,
one other fast about drove,

unz daz in niht was beliben
until that to-them nothing was remained

der schilte wan die riemen.
of-the shields except the straps.

dô schiet si leider niemen,
then parted them alas no-one,

vrouwen, rîter noch kneht;
ladies, knights nor servants;

ir gir was zesamne sleht
their desire was together straight

beiden ûf des tôdes wân;
both upon the death's hope;

dazn getorste niemen understân.
that dared no-one prevent.

valsches slôz, untriuwen zil
falseness's lock, faithlessness's goal

daz was der heiden, der daz spil
that was the heathen, who the play

sînem muote hêt erkorn,
for-his mind had chosen,

dar inne der tôt als ein dorn
there in the death as a thorn

in dem meien blüete.
in the May bloomed.

zorn und ungemüete,
anger and ill-mood,

daz uns tuot wê, daz tet im wol.
which us does woe, that did him well.

sîn barmunge alsam ein kol
his mercy as a coal

was, daz gar erloschen ist.
was, which wholly quenched is.

des leben hêt deheine vrist,
whose life had no respite,

swen sîn mortgirigiu hant
whomever his murder-greedy hand

an deheinem strîte überwant:
in any fight overcame:

des leben wart des tôdes pfant.
whose life became the death's pledge.

Dô vâhten si unz an die zît
Then fought they until to the time

daz ir rîterlîcher strît
that their knightly fight

mit grôzem jâmer ende nam.
with great grief end took.

ir ietweder âne scham
of-them each without shame

vil grôze slege dâ enpfie.
very great blows there received.

geselleschaft diu was hie
companionship it was here

under in beiden tiure.
between them both scarce.

ir helme mit viure
their helms with fire

vil ofte wurden bedaht;
very often became covered;

sus vâhten si die langen naht.
thus fought they the long night.

si muosen sich vil vaste wern
they must themselves very fast defend

und mit starken slegen nern,
and with strong blows save,

wand ez galt lîp unde guot.
for it cost life and goods.

si hêten beide mannes muot,
they had both man's mind,

beidiu kunst unde kraft;
both art and strength;

dâ von was diu rîterschaft
there from was the knighthood

hertẹ under in beiden.
hard between them both.

her Gwîgâlois den heiden
lord Gwigalois the heathen

mit des swertes orte nam.
with the sword's point took.

dô er im sô nâhen kam,
when he to-him so near came,

er kloup im brünje und îsengwant;
he split to-him byrnie and iron-clothing;

durch die brust er im zehant
through the breast he to-him at-once

sluoc eine starke wunden,
struck a strong wound,

dâ von er überwunden
there from he overcome

sich dem tôde muose ergeben.
himself to-the death must give-up.

sus endet sich der werlte leben;
thus ends itself the world's life;

vreude, guot und êre
joy, goods and honor

des wirt in niht mêre
of-that becomes to-them not more

dan mir des keisers krône;
than to-me of-the emperor's crown;

wan swer nâch gotes lône
for whoever after God's reward

in dirre werlt gedienet hât,
in this world served has,

swen ez im an die zît gât
when it to-him to the time goes

daz er niht lenger leben sol,
that he not longer live shall,

der vert sæliclîche wol;
he fares blessedly well;

alsô müeze ouch uns geschehen.
so may also to-us happen.

dô vrouwe Japhîte hêt ersehen
when lady Japhite had seen

daz ir man dâ tôter lac,
that her husband there dead lay,

ir süezen sit si verpflac
her sweet manner she forsook

und zarte ir sîdîn gewant;
and tore her silken clothing;

mit grôzem jâmer si zehant
with great grief she at-once

über in lief dâ er lac.
over him ran where he lay.

von sînem tôde si erschrac
from his death she took-fright

sô sêre daz ir herze brast
so sorely that her heart burst

lûte als ein dürrer ast,
loudly as a dry branch,

swâ man den bricht enzwei.
wherever one it breaks in-two.

si viel über in und schrei
she fell over him and cried

ein sô jæmerlîche stimme,
a so wretched voice,

dehein man wær sô grimme
no man were so grim

des muotes noch des herzen,
of-the mind nor of-the heart,

hêt er ir jâmers smerzen
had he her grief's pain

und ir grôze klage ersehen,
and her great lament seen,

im wær ze weinen geschehen.
to-him were to weep happened.

den helm bant si im abe
the helm bound she from-him off

mit sô grôzer ungehabe
with so great distress

daz ez was zerbarmen;
that it was to-pity;

mit ir wîzen armen
with her white arms

druhte si in alsô tôten
pressed she him so dead

an sich; er was verschrôten,
to herself; he was cut-up,

mit bluote berunnen gar;
with blood run-over wholly;

des nam si vil lützel war;
of-that took she very little heed;

si kuste in, als er wære gesunt,
she kissed him, as-if he were whole,

vil dicke an sînen tôten munt
very often on his dead mouth

und weinde in jæmerlîche an.
and wept him wretchedly on.

si sprach ‘owê, lieber man,
she spoke ‘alas, dear husband,

nu hâstu dînen schœnen lîp
now hast-thou thy beautiful body

verloren umb mich armez wîp;
lost for me poor woman;

daz tuot mir herzenlîche wê;
that does me heartily woe;

ouch sol ich mich niht sûmen mê
also shall I myself not delay more

ichn werde dîn geselle
unless-I become thy companion

ze himel od zer helle,
in heaven or in-the hell,

swederhalp wir müezen sîn;
whichever-side we must be;

owê, lieber herre mîn,
alas, dear lord mine,

daz ich dich tôten ie gesach!'
that I thee dead ever saw!'

ir hâr si ûz der swarten brach;
her hair she out-of the scalp tore;

daz was minniclîch gevar,
that was lovely colored,

reit unde lanc gar.
curly and long wholly.

si sprach 'wâ nu Machmêt?
she spoke 'where now Mahomet?

dîne helfe ich ie hêt
thy help I ever had

ze ganzem trôste und dîn gebot;
as whole comfort and thy command;

Machmêt, vil süezer got,
Mahomet, very sweet god,

ich hân dich geminnet ie;
I have thee loved ever;

wem hâstu mich nu lâzen hie?
to-whom hast-thou me now left here?

er lît tôter hie vor mir,
he lies dead here before me,

den ich bevalch mit dienest dir,
whom I commended with service to-thee,

sît ich sîn kunde alrêrst gewan.
since I of-him knowledge first won.

owê, Rôaz, vil lieber man,
alas, Roaz, very dear husband,

ich muoz dich klagèn, des gêt mir nôt;
I must thee lament, of-that goes to-me need;

von dînem tôde bin ich tôt;
from thy death am I dead;

du wærę mîn herze und mîn lîp,
thou wert my heart and my body,

ich dîn herze und dîn wîp;
I thy heart and thy wife;

wir hêten beidiu einen muot:
we had both one mind:

swaz ich wolde, daz dûht dich guot;
whatever I would, that seemed to-thee good;

swaz du woldest, daz wolde ouch ich; 7730
whatever thou wouldst, that would also I;

nu hât der ganze wille sich
now has the whole will itself

von dînem tôde gescheiden
by thy death parted

enzwischen uns beiden;
between us both;

sît dîn herze ie was mîn
since thy heart ever was mine

und aller mîn wille dîn, 7735
and all my will thine,

sô sol dîn tôt mîn tôt ouch sîn!'
so shall thy death my death also be!'

Japhite dies on Roaz's body, and the poet laments love that ends in sorrow and recalls Roaz's deeds at Babylon and Damascus. Gwigalois lies senseless, drained of blood. At daybreak Count Adan of Alarie, whose three brothers Roaz slew and who has had to keep his gate, finds the household lamenting; he stops the maidens from killing the knight, adjudges him the maiden and the land, declares himself his man, and revives him by naming Larie. The poet prays for Japhite, whose baptism was her sorrow.

Si huop in in ir schôze hie;
She lifted him into her lap here;

mit beiden armen sị in umbvie
with both arms she him embraced

mit sô jæmerlîcher klage,
with so wretched lament,

swie truckenlîche ichz dâ sage,
however dryly I-it there tell,

dâ von ir herze dürkel wart.
there from her heart pierced became.

owê der klägelîchen vart
alas the lamentable journey

und der jæmerlîchen nôt!
and the wretched distress!

sus lac si klagendẹ ob im tôt.
thus lay she lamenting over him dead.

swie si wær ein heidenin,
however she were a heathen-woman,

ganze triuwe und stæten sin
whole faith and steadfast mind

mit liebe sị an in kêrte,
with love she to him turned,

als si diu minne lêrte.
as her the love taught.

herzeliebe ist arbeit;
heart's-love is toil;

ir ende bringet herzeleit.
its end brings heart-sorrow.

daz wart wol an der vrouwen schîn;
that became well on the lady seen;

wær si niht ein heidenîn,
were she not a heathen-woman,

sô müese ich klagen ir jâmers nôt.
so must I lament her grief's distress.

hie lâgen samet vieriu tôt:
here lay together four dead:

zwô sêle und zwêne lîbe;
two souls and two bodies;

dem manne und sînem wîbe,
to-the man and his wife,

der sêle vor got sint erslagen;
whose souls before God are slain;

solhen tôt sol man klagen.
such death shall one lament.

wol in, der dem entrinnen mac
well for-him, who that escape may

und der den êwiclîchen tac
and who the eternal day

verdienet; der hât wol gevarn.
earns; he has well fared.

er ist ein sælic muoterbarn,
he is a blessed mother's-child,

swer dise werlt gebûwet alsô
whoever this world inhabits so

daz sînes tôdès sîn sêle ist vrô;
that of-his death his soul is glad;

des leider nû niht vil ergêt.
of-which alas now not much goes.

her Gwîgâlois gestriten hêt,
lord Gwigalois fought had,

daz er des bluotes was ersigen;
that he of-the blood was drained;

er hêt sich alsô gar erwigen
he had himself so wholly drained

daz er vür tôt ouch lac aldâ.
that he for dead also lay there.

sich huop vil grôziu klage sâ;
itself raised very great lament at-once;

in dem hûse über al
in the house over all

wart ein jæmerlîcher schal
became a wretched clamor

von dem gesinde daz dâ was.
from the household which there was.

si liefen ûf den palas
they ran up-to the palace

schrîunde owê, und rouften sich;
crying alas, and tore themselves;

ir klage diu was jæmerlich
their lament it was wretched

umb ir herṛen der was erslagen.
for their lord who was slain.

ouch muosen si von schulden klagen
also must they by right lament

des reinen wîbes triuwe,
the pure woman's faith,

diu von herzenriuwe
who from heart's-rue

durch ir gesellen lac dâ tôt,
for her companion lay there dead,

als ir der minne kraft gebôt.
as her the love's power commanded.

diu twinget manic herze;
it compels many-a heart;

ir ende ist jâmers smerze,
its end is grief's pain,

als ich iu hie bescheide; 7785
as I to-you here explain;

liep zergêt mit leide.
joy perishes with sorrow.

alsô zergienc ir vreude gar,
so perished their joy wholly,

die si mit ganzer liebe dar
which they with whole love thither

hêten brâht vil manic jâr.
had brought very many-a year.

Owê dir, tôt! du bist ein hagel; 7790
Woe to-thee, death! thou art a hail;

vil bitter riuwe treit dîn zagel
very bitter rue bears thy tail

und jæmerlîchez ende;
and wretched end;

dîn slôz und dîn gebende
thy lock and thy band

bindet und besliuzet daz
binds and locks that

dâ von diu ougen werdent naz: 7795
there from the eyes become wet:

daz ist jâmer unde leit.
that is grief and sorrow.

ein rîter hie dîn wâfen treit,
a knight here thy arms bears,

der ez ie vil gerne gap.
who it ever very gladly gave.

sîn hant vil mangen in daz grap
his hand very many-a-one into the grave
mit rîters were hât geleit.
with knight's defense has laid.
sold ich von sîner manheit
should I of his manhood
nu sagen und von sîner kraft,
now tell and of his strength,
die er begie mit rîterschaft,
which he performed with knighthood,
und wie er muose strîten,
and how he must fight,
dô er die vrouwẹn Japhîten
when he the lady Japhite
mit dem hœhsten prîse erwarp,
with the highest prize won,
dâ manic edel vürste starp
where many-a noble prince died
vor Babylôn von sîner hant —
before Babylon by his hand—
âvoy, wie wol dâ wart bekant
ah, how well there became known
sîn kraft und sîn manheit!
his strength and his manhood!
mit rîterlîcher were er reit
with knightly defense he rode
durch die poinder mit slegen wider.
through the charges with blows back.
von sîner jost viel dâ nider
from his joust fell there down
vil manic stolzer Babylôn
very many-a proud Babylonian
dô den künic von Ascalôn
when the king of Ascalon

valte dâ sîn lanze;
felled there his lance;

der tet im fîanze:
he did him fiance:

daz spricht entiuschen sicherheit.
that says in-German surety.

Rôaz sô rîterlîche streit
Roaz so knightly fought

daz er den prîs dâ gewan,
that he the prize there won,

als er ê oft hêt getân:
as he before often had done:

in einem strîte vor Dômas,
in a fight before Damascus,

dâ manic rîcher vürste was,
where many-a rich prince was,

künige, grâven, herzogen,
kings, counts, dukes,

sîn prîs sô hôhẹ dâ wart gezogen
his prize so high there became drawn

daz in niemen mohte erlangen.
that him no-one might reach.

erslagen und gevangen
slain and captured

vuort er die vürsten in die stat.
led he the princes into the city.

sîn prîs sagt in dâ allen mat;
his prize said to-them there all checkmate;

sus steic er ie daz hœhste pfat.
thus climbed he ever the highest path.

Swaz er mit sîner manheit
Whatever he with his manhood

ganzes lobes hêt bejeit
of-whole praise had won

vil rîterlîche sîne tage,
very knightly his days,

daz wirt ze lanc, ob ich daz sage;
that becomes too long, if I that tell;

dâ von wil ichz nû verdagen.
there from will I-it now keep-silent.

hie was grôz weinen unde klagen
here was great weeping and lamenting

von den mägden wol getân.
from the maidens well made.

der tac begunde ouch ûf gân;
the day began also up to-go;

entslozzen wurḍen diu bürgetor.
unlocked became the castle-gates.

dâ saz ein alter vürste vor,
there sat an old prince before,

der grâvẹ Adân von Âlârîe.
the count Adan of Alarie.

sîner bruoder drîe
his brothers three

sluoc Rôaz mit sîner hant.
slew Roaz with his hand.

sînen lîp und ouch sîn lant
his body and also his land

muos er in sînen gwalt geben.
must he into his power give.

alsô liez er in dô leben
so let he him then live

daz er sîn portenære
that he his gatekeeper

unz an sîn ende wære;
until to his end were;

des hêt er sîne sicherheit.
of-that had he his surety.

ditz was ein jæmerlîchez leit
this was a wretched sorrow

daz ouch bî im dâ lac erslagen
that also by him there lay slain

der gwalticlîche solde tragen
who powerfully should bear

in dem lande zę Mirmidône
in the land at Mirmidon

beidiu zepter unde krône.
both scepter and crown.

den vie Rôaz vor Dômas,
him captured Roaz before Damascus,

wand er im dâ vor lange was
for he to-him there before long was

herzenlîche vînt gewesen.
heartily foe been.

durch vrouwen bet liez er genesen
for ladies' request let he survive

den selben vürsten, dô ern vie;
the same prince, when he-him captured;

er muose ouch dirre porte hie
he must also this gate here

hüeten unz an sînen tôt,
guard until to his death,

als im diu sicherheit gebôt
as him the surety commanded

die er Rôaz hêt getân.
which he to-Roaz had done.

nu ẹrhôrte ir klagẹ der grâve Adân
now heard their lament the count Adan

7865 und ir jæmerlîchen schal,
and their wretched clamor,

der sich dâ huop ûf dem sal
which itself there raised up-in the hall

von den mägden wol getân,
from the maidens well made,

und daz daz tor wart ûf getân.
and that the gate became up opened.

des nam in wunder und gie dar.
of-that took him wonder and went thither.

7870 dô vant er daz gesinde gar
then found he the household wholly

in jæmerlîcher riuwe.
in wretched rue.

ir klage diu was niuwe
their lament it was new

umḅ den wirt der was erslagen.
for the host who was slain.

ouch muosen si mit triuwen klagen
also must they with faith lament

7875 die reinen wirtinne,
the pure hostess,

diu guotes wîbes sinne
who good woman's mind

brâhte unz an ir ende.
brought until to her end.

âne missewende
without blemish

lac diu vrouwe Japhîte tôt;
lay the lady Japhite dead;

des twanc si ganzer triuwe nôt
to-that compelled her whole faith's need

und herzenlîchiu minne.
and heartfelt love.

sêle, lîp und sinne
soul, body and wits

schiet diu herzeleide.
parted the heart-sorrow.

nu seht wer si dâ scheide,
now see who her there parted,

herzeliep od herzeleit,
heart's-love or heart-sorrow,

wie wirt daz gänzlîch geseit?
how becomes that wholly told?

sît ich sîn niht gesagen kan,
since I it not tell can,

wâ ist nû ein wîser man,
where is now a wise man,

der mir den strît bescheide?
who for-me the dispute decides?

starp si von herzeleide,
died she from heart-sorrow,

daz muose von herzeliebe sîn;
that must from heart's-love be;

diu gap ir herzen solhen pîn
it gave to-her heart such pain

dâ von ir schœner lîp verdarp.
there from her beautiful body perished.

ich wæns et von in beiden starp;
I believe-it just from them both died;

anders ich mich niht verstên.
otherwise I myself not understand.

sold ich dem strîte nâch gên,
should I the dispute after go,

sô würdẹ der rede lîhtẹ ze vil;
so would-become of-the speech easily too much;

dâ von ich mich niht sûmen wil
there from I myself not delay will

an der âventiure.
at the adventure.

ist dehein crêatiure
is any creature

diu ganzer triuwe geniezen sol,
which of-whole faith enjoy shall,

so genist mîn vrouwẹ Japhîte wol,
so is-saved my lady Japhite well,

wan si was ganzer triuwe vol.
for she was of-whole faith full.

Hie ist diu âventiure geholt.
Here is the adventure fetched.

wâ ist nu der minne solt,
where is now the love's pay,

des wunsches âmîe,
of-the ideal beloved,

diu schœne Lârîe?
the beautiful Larie?

hie lît ir vriunt, her Gwîgâlois,
here lies her beloved, lord Gwigalois,

den der milte Britanois,
whom the generous Briton,

der künic Artûs, hât gesant
the king Arthur, has sent

zer âventiurę, daz er daz lant
to-the adventure, that he the land

solde erwerben und die maget.
should win and the maiden.

owê, daz den niemen klaget!
alas, that him no-one laments!

er lît hie leider âne kraft,
he lies here alas without strength,

der mit rehter rîterschaft
who with right knighthood

und mit ganzer manheit,
and with whole manhood,

als uns diu âventiure seit,
as us the adventure tells,

vil mangen hôhen prîs gewan.
very many-a high prize won.

er lac dâ als ein tôter man
he lay there as a dead man

âne kraft und âne sin.
without strength and without wits.

die juncvrouwen hêten in
the young-ladies had him

von dem houbte entwâfent gar
from the head unarmed wholly

und nâmen des vil rehte war
and took of-that very rightly heed

ob er lebte od wære tôt.
whether he lived or were dead.

dô wâren im diu hiufel rôt
then were to-him the cheeks red

und allez lebelîch getân.
and all lifelike made.

dô wolde in erslagen hân
then would him slain have

vor leide diu vil süeze schar.
from sorrow the very sweet troop.

des wart der grâve Adân gewar;
of-that became the count Adan aware;

vil sêrẹ muot in sîn ungemach.
very sorely vexed him his distress.

er lief über in und sprach
he ran over him and spoke

'ey, guoten vrouwẹn! habt ir den muot
'hey, good ladies! have you the mind

daz ir disem rîter guot
that you from-this knight good

sînen lîp nemen welt,
his life take will,

der rîterlîche als ein helt
who knightly as a hero

die âventiure erstriten hât?
the adventure won-by-fighting has?

daz ist ein grôziu missetât,
that is a great misdeed,

wand er durch vrouwen minne
for he for ladies' love

lîp, guot und sinne
life, goods and wits

hât verloren vil nâch gar.
has lost very nearly wholly.

nu nemt, ir edeln vrouwen, war,
now take, you noble ladies, heed,

swâ ein sô guot rîter lebe,
wherever a so good knight lives,

wie mangem herzẹn er vreude gebe.
how to-many-a heart he joy gives.

lât mich in neren ob ich müge;
let me him save if I may;

jâ wæn ie wîbes brust gesüge
indeed believe-I never woman's breast suckled

bezzer rîter dan er ist.
better knight than he is.

nu gebet sînem leben vrist
now give to-his life respite

unz erz verliese als ers ger;
until he-it lose as he-of-it desires;

jâ kan er wol mit sînem sper
indeed can he well with his spear

rîterlîchen tôt bejagen.
knightly death win.

würd er von wîbes hant erslagen,
should-become he by woman's hand slain,

des leben âne missetât
whose life without misdeed

sîne zît behalten hât
his time kept has

und der von sîner manheit
and who from his manhood

den aller hœhsten prîs nu treit,
the of-all highest prize now bears,

daz würde ein jæmerlîchez leit.
that would-become a wretched sorrow.

Ir mugt in gerne lâzen leben.
You may him gladly let live.

iun mac sîn tôt doch niht gegeben
to-you may his death yet not give

die vrouwen noch den wirt wider.
the lady nor the host back.

sîn übermuot der valte in nider
his arrogance it felled him down

und sîn gewalt den er begie
and his violence which he committed

an dirre juncvrouwen hie,
on this young-lady here,

vrouwen Lârîẹn, der schœnen maget.
lady Larie, the beautiful maiden.

der sluoc er, als mir ist gesaget
to-her slew he, as to-me is told

ir vater, der hie schône
her father, who here beautifully

truoc zepter unde krône
bore scepter and crown

nâch küniclîcher werdecheit.
after kingly worthiness.

nu hât errochen dạz selbe leit
now has avenged the same sorrow

dirre helt mit sîner hant!
this hero with his hand!

dem erteile ich maget unde lant.
to-him adjudge I maiden and land.

ouch wil ich im vür disen tac,
also will I to-him from this day,

swâ ich kan unde mac,
wherever I can and may,

mit lîbe und mit guote
with body and with goods

dienen nâch sînem muote;
serve after his mind;

daz ist mîn reht: ich bin sîn man;
that is my right: I am his man;

swaz man im tuot od hât getân,
whatever one to-him does or has done,

daz hilfe ich rechen swâ er wil.
that help I avenge wherever he will.

ich bin komen ûf daz zil
I am come upon the goal

daz mînes leides wirdet rât;
that of-my sorrow becomes remedy;

mîn sicherheit ein ende hât
my surety an end has

die ich dem künige hêt getân
which I to-the king had done

ich solde nimmer komen dan,
I should never come away,

die wîle er lebte, von dem tor;
the while he lived, from the gate;

dâ hüete ouch nû ein ander vor!
there guard also now an other before!

der mich dâ von enbunden hât,
who me there from unbound has,

dem sol mîn helfe und mîn rât
to-him shall my help and my counsel

immer undertænic sîn.
ever subject be.

nu stêt ûf, lieber herre mîn!
now stand up, dear lord mine!

ich tuon iu helfe mit triuwen schîn.'
I make to-you help with faith seen.'

Er rihte in ûf und sach in an.
He raised him up and looked him on.

sîn härsenier daz was im dan
his mail-hood that was to-him away

von dem houbte enbunden gar.
from the head unbound wholly.

von bluoṭe diu wangen und sîn hâr
from blood the cheeks and his hair

diu wâren jæmerlîch getân.
they were wretchedly made.

‘owê’, sprach der grâve Adân
‘alas’, spoke the count Adan

‘dîner lieben âmîen,
‘for-thy dear beloved,

der schœnen magt Lârîen!
the beautiful maiden Larie!

diu muoz immer sîn unvrô,
she must ever be unglad,

verdirbt dîn schœner lîp alsô
(if)-perishes thy beautiful body so

in ir minne dienest hie.’
in her love’s service here.’

von dem namen dô gevie
from the name then caught

kraft der halptôte man;
strength the half-dead man;

er sûfte sêre und sach si an
he sighed sorely and looked them on

die bî im dâ wâren dô.
who by him there were then.

des wart der grâve Adân vil vrô;
of-that became the count Adan very glad;

er sprach ‘herre, gehabt iuch wol!
he spoke ‘lord, fare you well!

iuwer leit sich hie enden sol.
your sorrow itself here end shall.

ez hât erstriten iuwer hant
it has won-by-fighting your hand

eine schœne maget und ein lant
a beautiful maiden and a land

dem sich niht gelîchen mac.’ 8010
to-which itself nothing compare may.’

nu was ez alsô hôher tac
now was it so high day

daz diu sunne erzeicte ir schîn.
that the sun showed its shine.

dô weinde manic heidenîn
then wept many-a heathen-woman

von hôher [gẹ]burt ûz Asîâ
of high [b]irth out-of Asia

ir vil lieben vrouwen dâ, 8015
their very dear lady there,

die getriuwen vrouwẹn Japhîten.
the faithful lady Japhite.

ezn lebte bî den zîten
there lived by the times

dehein vrouwe mit sô reinen siten.
no lady with so pure manners.

owê, wan solde ich guotes biten
alas, if-only should I of-good beg

ir sêlẹ der lîp alsô verdarp! 8020
for-her soul whose body so perished!

diu vrouwẹ von herzeleide starp.
the lady from heart-sorrow died.

ich geloube daz si sül genesen;
I believe that she shall be-saved;

diu wâre riuwe ist gewesen
the true rue is been

ir touf an ir ende.
her baptism at her end.

herre got, nu sende
lord God, now send

ze schirme ir dîne barmicheit,
as shelter to-her thy mercy,

diu manger sêle ist bereit.
which to-many-a soul is ready.

herre, getürre es iemen gern,
lord, (if)-dare it anyone desire,

sô soltu si genâden wern,
so shalt-thou her of-grace grant,

daz si genieze ir triuwe:
that she enjoy her faith:

ir touf was diu riuwe
her baptism was the rue

die si dolte umb ir liep.
which she suffered for her love.

dô kom der tôt als ein diep
then came the death as a thief

und stal dem reinen wîbe
and stole from-the pure woman

daz leben ûz ir lîbe.
the life out-of her body.

als ich iu ê hân geseit,
as I to-you before have told,

herzeliebe ist arbeit;
heart's-love is toil;

ir ende bringet herzeleit.
its end brings heart-sorrow.

Glois holds no knights, since Roaz trusted his wheel and feared for his wife's love; the poet compares the ladies' grief to the mourning he saw for a prince of Meran. Gwigalois raves of Larie until Adan draws him away; devils carry off Roaz's body, and Gwigalois sets out the Christian faith, which Adan resolves to receive. Japhite is laid in a jacinth coffin under a marble vault, with balsam lamps and an epitaph in heathen and French, and the household submits to Gwigalois, with Adan interpreting.

Diu burc glaste als ein glas.
The castle gleamed as a glass.

niht rîter mêr dạr ûffe was,
no knights more there upon was,

niwan dise zwêne man,
except these two men,

her Gwîgâlois und grâve Adân.
lord Gwigalois and count Adan.

ich sagiu wâ von daz geschach
I tell-you where from that happened

daz man niht rîter drûffe sach:
that one no knights there-upon saw:

der künic was ân angest gar
the king was without fear wholly

daz durch daz tor iemen dar
that through the gate anyone thither

möhte komen vor dem rade;
might come before the wheel;

ouch was sîn angest ẹịn ander schade:
also was his fear an other harm:

er vorhte daz ir minne
he feared that her love

vil lîhtẹ diu küniginne
very easily the queen

gewante an einen andern man.
turned to an other man.

deiswâr, desn hêt si niht getân, —
truly, that had she not done,—

daz erzeiget sị an ir tôde sît —
that showed she in her death afterward—

wan daz diu liebe zaller zît
except that the love at-all time

ir liep vil gernẹ mit huote hât.
its love very gladly with guard has.

an ir was aller huote rât,
in her was of-all guard dispensable,

wan si was âne missetât.
for she was without misdeed.

Vierzic was der vrouwen;
Forty were of-the ladies;

dar under mohtẹ man schouwen
there among might one behold

vil grôzen jâmer unde klage.
very great grief and lament.

vür wâr ich iu ein mære sage:
for true I to-you a tale tell:

ich wil gelîchen dirre nôt
I will liken to-this distress

eines vil edeln vürsten tôt
a very noble prince's death

von Merân, dâ ịch jâmer sach
of Meran, where I grief saw

und von klage dẹn ungemach
and from lament the distress

von der werlte wunne,
from the world's delight,

ez möhtẹ diu liehte sunne
it might the bright sun

ir schîn dâ von verlorn hân.
its shine there from lost have.

daz tâten vrouwen wol getân,
that did ladies well made,

geboren von der hœhsten art
born of the highest kind

diu ie in der werlte wart.
which ever in the world became.

dâ was solch jâmer unde klage,
there was such grief and lament,

ob ich mîn herzẹ ḥie ganzez trage,
if I my heart here whole bear,

daz ich des niht gelouben mac.
that I of-that not believe may.

ich hôrtẹ dâ mangen grôzen krac
I heard there many-a great crack

von reiner vrouwen herzen;
from pure ladies' hearts;

diu truogen jâmers smerzen
they bore grief's pain

umḅ des edeln vürsten tôt.
for the noble prince's death.

sî sîn sêle in dẹheiner nôt,
(if)-be his soul in any distress,

dâ nim si ûz, vil reiner Krist!
there take it out, very pure Christ!

wan du sô bescheiden bist
for thou so discerning art

daz du der reinen wîbe klagen
that thou the pure women's lamenting

und sîne nôt niht solt vertragen.
and his distress not shalt endure.

gedenkẹ bî dîner menscheit
think by thy humanity

wie brœde süeze ir leben treit,
how frail sweetness their life bears,

und gip daz wir verdienen hie
and give that we earn here

die vreude die dhein ôre nie
the joy which any ear never

gehôrte noch nie ouge ersach
heard nor never eye saw

noch nie munt dâ von gesprach
nor never mouth there of spoke

daz sich iht gelîche dar.
that itself aught likens thereto.

herre, nim dîner [gẹ]schefte war
lord, take of-thy [c]reatures heed

ê dan si verzwîvelẹ gar.
before then they despair wholly.

Got müeze im dort genædic sîn!
God may to-him there gracious be!

nu wil ich an die rede mîn
now will I at the speech mine

wider grîfen dâ ịch si lie.
back grasp where I it left.

her Gwîgâlois der lac hie
lord Gwigalois he lay here

under der trûrigen schar.
among the sad troop.

ein reiner muot erkucte im gar
a pure mind quickened to-him wholly

daz herze und sîne sinne.
the heart and his wits.

er sprach ‘owê, minne,
he spoke ‘alas, love,

gêret sî dîn süezer nam!
honored be thy sweet name!

dir solde niemen wesen gram;
to-thee should no-one be hostile;

du bist ze sprechẹn ein lindez wort
thou art to speak a soft word

und treist iedoch vil scharfen ort
and bearest yet very sharp point

und eine herte snîde.
and a hard edge.

waz ich von dir lîde
what I from thee suffer

kumbèrs und hân erliten!
of-grief and have suffered!

du hâst ze nâhen mir gesniten
thou hast too near me cut

enmitten durch daz herze mîn!
in-the-middle through the heart mine!

vrouwe Minne, ich muoz sîn
lady Love, I must be

dîn gevangen; du hâst mich gar
thy captive; thou hast me wholly

mit dîner kraft gezogen dar
with thy strength drawn thither

dâ von ich niht gewenken mac.
there from I not swerve may.

jâ ist si mînes herzen tac
indeed is she my heart's day
und der wunsch mîner sinne.
and the ideal of-my wits.
vrouwe Lârîe, küniginne,
lady Larie, queen,
wenne sol ich dich gesehen!
when shall I thee see!
mîniu ougen kunden rehte spehen
my eyes could rightly spy
dô si dir prîses jâhen!
when they to-thee of-prize granted!
wenne kum ich dir sô nâhen
when come I to-thee so near
daz sich mîn herze erküele an dir!
that itself my heart cools on thee!
du solt von rehte werden mir,
thou shalt by right become mine,
wand ich dich, vrouwe, erstriten han.'
for I thee, lady, won-by-fighting have.'
sîn gebærde wart alsô getân
his bearing became so made
sam si bî im wære dâ.
as-if she by him were there.
grâve Adân der vienc in sâ;
count Adan he caught him at-once;
bî dem arme zôch er în dan.
by the arm drew he him away.
er sprach 'herre, gedenket dár àn
he spoke 'lord, think there on
daz iu nû daz wægest sî
what to-you now the best be
und lât solhe gedanke vrî.
and let such thoughts free.

iuwer leit daz sol nu ende haben.
your sorrow it shall now end have.

die tôten lâze wir begraben
the dead let we bury

und habẹn uns an der vreuden vart.'
and hold ourselves to the joy's path.'

der rede im dô gevolget wart
to-the speech to-him then followed became

dô sich her Gwîgâlois versan.
when himself lord Gwigalois came-to.

Rôaz der wart verstolen dan
Roaz he became stolen away

zehant von der tievel schar
at-once by the devils' troop

daz sîn dâ niemen wart gewar
so-that of-him there no-one became aware

unz daz man in ûz solde tragen;
until that one him out should carry;

dô huop sich alrêrst grôzez klagen
then raised itself first-of-all great lamenting

und weinen von den vrouwen.
and weeping from the ladies.

'hie bî mugt ir schouwen'
'here by may you behold'

sprach her Gwîgâlois der degen
spoke lord Gwigalois the thane

'daz unser toufe und unser segen
'that our baptism and our blessing

ein schirm vür den tievel ist.
a shelter against the devil is.

wolt ir gelouben an Krist,
would you believe in Christ,

nâch dem wir kristen sîn genant,
after whom we Christians are named,

sô enpfienget ir zehant
so would-receive you at-once

der engel genôzschaft
the angels' fellowship

und enmöhte iu niht des tievels kraft
and might to-you not the devil's strength

geschaden noch sîn arger list
harm nor his evil cunning

vor dem der uns dâ schirmẹ̈nde ist,
before him who to-us there sheltering is,

wan daz ist der wâre got.
for that is the true God.

wir gelouben daz in sîn̤em gebot
we believe that in his command

ist swaz ie geschaffen wart
is whatever ever created became

und daz er schirmet und bewart
and that he shelters and guards

swaz sîn genâde erkennet.
whatever his grace acknowledges.

unser gloube in alsô nennet:
our creed him so names:

vater, sun, hêrre geist.
father, son, holy ghost.

sô i̤st daz unser volleist,
so is that our help,

der gotes sun, der mägde kint.
the God's son, the maiden's child.

die an disem glouben sint
who in this belief are

und behaltent kristen ê,
and keep Christian law,

die sint ze gnâden immer mê.
they are in grace ever more.

nu schaffẹt daz ẹz iu alsam ergê!' 8165
now bring-about that it to-you likewise goes!'

Mit triuwen sprach der grâve Adân
With faith spoke the count Adan

'ich wirde im gerne undertân
'I become to-him gladly subject

swer vor dem tievel mich bewart.
whoever from the devil me guards.

ez ist ein jæmerlîchiu vart
it is a wretched journey

sol nu der mensche zẹ helle varn. 8170
(if)-shall now the human to hell fare.

mac iuwer segen mich bewarn
(if)-may your blessing me guard

vor der helle und kristen ê,
from the hell and Christian law,

sône wil ich mich niht sûmen mê
so will I myself not delay more

ich enpfâhẹ der kristen ê zehant.
I unless-receive the Christian law at-once.

solde mîn sêlẹ des wesen pfant 8175
should my soul for-that be pledge

des der lîp hie begât,
which the body here commits,

und daz ir nimmer würde rât,
and that for-it never would-become remedy,

sône hêt ich hie niht wol gevarn;
so would-have I here not well fared;

den selben tôt sol ich bewarn.
the same death shall I guard-against.

vervluochet sî diu heidenschaft, 8180
cursed be the heathendom,

sît an ir des tievels kraft
since on it the devil's strength

sînen gwalt mac erzeigen.
his power may show.

ich wil mich dâ hin neigen
I will myself there thither incline

dâ sîn gewalt ende hât
where his power end has

und mîner sêle wirdet rât.
and for-my soul becomes remedy.

wâ nû der touf? ich bin bereit,
where now the baptism? I am ready,

sît ûz unser ê hin treit
since out-of our law thither carries

der tievel einẹn sô werden man.
the devil a so worthy man.

mîner sêle ich niemen gan
my soul I to-no-one grant

wan dem der si geschaffen hât,
except to-him who it created has,

in des gewalt diu werlt stât,
in whose power the world stands,

der ie was und immer ist.
who ever was and ever is.

den nennet ir den wâren Krist;
him name you the true Christ;

der ist den ich dâ meine;
he is whom I there mean;

er ist got alters eine
he is God of-old alone

und iedoch endriu genamt;
and yet in-three named;

sîn gotheit diu ist ensamt
his godhead it is together

und immer ungescheiden.
and ever unparted.

swie gar ich sî ein heiden,
however wholly I be a heathen,

von dem gedanke kom ich nie
from the thought came I never

ichn minnẹt iedoch den got ie
unless-I loved yet the God ever

der uns geschuof von nihte.
who us created from nothing.

nu bin ich an die rihte
now am I to the right-way

alrêrst des gelouben komen;
first of-the belief come;

dâ von ich wunder hân vernomen,
there from I wonder have heard,

dem wil ouch ich nu volgen nâch;
it will also I now follow after;

zer toufe wart dem grâven gâch.
to-the baptism became to-the count hasty.

dône was niht pfaffen bî im dâ.
then was no priest by him there.

her Gwîgâlois der sprach sâ
lord Gwigalois he spoke at-once

‘wir sulen bîten, grâve Adân,
‘we shall wait, count Adan,

got hât wol zuo uns getân:
God has well to us done:

er hât mir den sic gegeben
he has me the victory given

und iu daz êwige leben
and to-you the eternal life

gẹoffent gẹnædiclîche;
opened graciously;

sus sî wir beide rîche
thus are we both rich

von gotes gnâden worden.
from God's grace become.

ir sult in Kristes orden
you shall in Christ's order

die toufe enpfâhẹn und kristen ê;
the baptism receive and Christian law;

ich wil benamen nû niht mê
I will assuredly now not more

mîn leit mit solhem jâmer klagen.
my sorrow with such grief lament.

wir sulen got genâde sagen
we shall to-God thanks say

und unser liep mit vreuden tragen.'
and our joy with joys bear.'

Des volget im der grâve Adân.
Of-that followed him the count Adan.

ir klage wart dô hin getân;
their lament became then away put;

ze vreuden rihten si ir leben.
to joys directed they their life.

guot trôst den vrouwen wart gegeben
good comfort to-the ladies became given

von dem jungen wirte dâ.
by the young host there.

vrouwẹn Japhîten truoc man sâ
lady Japhite carried one at-once

mit grôzer klage vür daz tor;
with great lament before the gate;

dâ legt man die reinen vor
there laid one the pure-one before

in einen rôten jâchant.
in a red jacinth.

den sarc man dâ stênde vant
the coffin one there standing found

ûf zwein siulen êrîn.
upon two pillars of-bronze.

zwei glas gesetzet wâren dạr în
two glasses set were there in

zir vüezen und zir houbet, —
at-her feet and at-her head,—

ichn weiz ob irz geloubet —
I-not know whether you-it believe—

diu wârn gefult mit balsamô;
they were filled with balsam;

den zunde man, und brinnẹt alsô
them lit one, and burns so

noch hiute, als mir ist geseit.
yet today, as to-me is told.

ûf den sarc wart geleit
upon the coffin became laid

ein saphir lâzûrvar.
a sapphire azure-colored.

den sarc hêt gemeistert dar
the coffin had mastered there

Rôaz dô er gewaltes pflac.
Roaz when he power wielded.

wart Gahmuret ze Baldac
(if)-became Gahmuret at Baghdad

von dem bâruc bestatet baz,
by the baruc buried better,

deiswâr, daz lâze ich âne haz,
truly, that leave I without hatred,

wand er hêt grôze rîcheit.
for he had great richness.

umḅ disen sarc wart geleit
about this coffin became laid

von golde ein grôzez vingerlîn: —
of gold a great little-ring:—

dar an was ir triuwe schîn —
there on was their faith seen—

zwô hende nâch der triuwe.
two hands after the faith.

mit herzenlîcher riuwe
with heartfelt rue

vrouwe Japhîte wart begraben.
lady Japhite became buried.

mit guldînen buochstaben
with golden letters

gesmelzet ûf den jâchant
enameled upon the jacinth

ein êpitâfîum man vant
an epitaph one found

gebrievet von ir tôde hie,
written of her death here,

heidenisch und franzois, wie
heathenish and French, how

si starp von herzeleide.
she died from heart-sorrow.

die schrift sagten beide
the writing said both

'hie lît in disem steine
'here lies in this stone

vrouwe Japhîte diu reine,
lady Japhite the pure,

der ganzer tugent niht gebrast.
to-whom of-whole virtue nothing lacked.

ir kiusche truoc der êren last.
her chastity bore the honors' load.

an stæte gewancte nie ir muot;
in steadfastness wavered never her mind;

si was gewizzen unde guot
she was discreet and good

und truoc die wâren minne.
and bore the true love.

mit zühticlîchem sinne
with modest mind

lebt si nâch wîplîchem sit;
lived she after womanly manner;

dem volget ganze triuwe mit.
it followed whole faith with.

si was geborn von hôher art.
she was born of high kind.

getriuwer wîp niene wart
more-faithful woman never became

geborn noch sô valschlôs.
born nor so falseless.

ir schœnen lîp si verlôs
her beautiful body she lost

von herzenlîcher riuwe;
from heartfelt rue;

den tôt gap ir diu triuwe
the death gave her the faith

die si Rôaz, dem heiden, truoc,
which she to-Roaz, the heathen, bore,

den Gwîgâlois, der kristen, sluoc.
whom Gwigalois, the Christian, slew.

diu vrouwe was ein heidenin;
the lady was a heathen-woman;

von disem lîbe schiet si hin
from this life parted she thither

leider ungetoufet.
alas unbaptized.

im selbẹn er sælde koufet
for-himself self he blessedness buys

swer umḅ den andern vrumt gebet.
whoever for the other makes prayer.

nu wünschet gnâdẹn an dirre stet
now wish grace in this place

der sêle, swer die schrift hie lese,
to-the soul, whoever the writing here reads,

daz ir got genædic wese
that to-her God gracious be

durch sîne grôze erbarmicheit,
through his great mercy,

wan si den tôt von triuwen leit;
for she the death from faith suffered;

diu riuwe ir abe ḍạz herze sneit.'
the rue to-her off the heart cut.'

Beslozzen wart der edel stein.
Closed became the noble stone.

an ietwederm orte schein
at each corner shone

von golde ein rinc spanne wît;
of gold a ring a-span wide;

dâ mit was zer selben zît
there with was at-the same time

der saphir ûf den sarc gehaben.
the sapphire upon the coffin held.

von golde ein rouchvaz was ergraben
of gold a censer was engraved

besigelt ûf den jâchant,
sealed upon the jacinth,

dar innẹ man zallen zîten vant
there in one at-all times found

mit süezem smacke brinnen dâ
with sweet smell burn there

diu reinen thymîâmatâ.
the pure incenses.

sus wart der sarc gehêret,
thus became the coffin honored,

grôz rîcheit dran gekêret,
great richness thereon turned,

undẹr einem [gẹ]welbe märmelîn;
under a [v]ault of-marble;

der gap wider eịn ander schîn,
it gave against one other shine,

rôt, grüenẹ, weitîn und gel.
red, green, woad-blue and yellow.

daz gewelbe daz was sinwel,
the vault it was round,

mit gemælde wol gezieret,
with painting well adorned,

von golde geparrieret.
with gold embellished.

ditz was der heiden bethûs.
this was the heathens' house-of-prayer.

der rîche künic Artûs
the rich king Arthur
möhte mit aller sîner habe
might with all his property
die gezierde an dem grabe
the adornment on the grave
niht hân erziuget und den stein,
not have produced and the stone,
dô er aller rîchest schein,
when he of-all richest appeared,
dar innę diu vrouwe bestatet was.
there in the lady buried was.
der estrich was als ein glas
the floor was as a glass
lûter, grüene, spiegelvar.
clear, green, mirror-colored.
daz gewelbe hêt gemeistert dar
the vault had mastered there
Rôaz durch sînen hôhen muot.
Roaz for his high spirit.
er hêt âne mâze guot;
he had without measure goods;
daz schein an der gezierde wol.
that showed in the adornment well.
nu was sîn hôchvart als ein kol
now was his arrogance as a coal
mit dem lîbe erloschen gar.
with the body quenched wholly.
sus wârn verendet sîniu jâr,
thus were ended his years,
als ich iu gesaget hân.
as I to-you told have.
dô diu bivilde wart getân,
when the burial became done,

[dô] giengen die vrouwen wol getân
[then] went the ladies well made

und daz gesindę mit klage dan
and the household with lament away

dâ her Gwîgâlois dô stuont.
where lord Gwigalois then stood.

si tâten als die wîsen tuont,
they did as the wise do,

die âne helfę mit leide lebent
who without help with sorrow live

und sich dem zwîvel gar ergebent:
and themselves to-the doubt wholly give-up:

sį ergâben sich in sîn gebot
they gave-up themselves into his command

und mantęn in bî dem wâren got
and adjured him by the true God

daz er bedæhte ir swære
that he considered their heaviness

und in genædic wære;
and to-them gracious were;

si woldęn im wesen undertân.
they would to-him be subject.

des antwurt in der grâve Adân
for-that answered them the count Adan

an der selben stunde,
at the same hour,

wand er die sprâche kunde,
for he the language knew,

heidenisch und franzois.
heathenish and French.

er sprach ‘mîn herrę, ḥer Gwîgâlois
he spoke ‘my lord, lord Gwigalois

der wil iu gerne wesen guot,
he will to-you gladly be good,

ob ir nâch sînem willen tuot;
if you after his will do;

daz ist sîn rede und ouch sîn muot.'
that is his speech and also his mind.'

XXIX · THE RETURN TO JORAPHAS

Gwigalois sets Adan over the treasure, has his wounds bound, and still longs for Larie as he rides before the gate and fiddlers play. At sunset they stop the wheel, and Adan swears to keep the land for him. Count Moral's men do not know him by Adan's shield and the white horse until they see the wheel; Moral learns that Roaz is dead, becomes his man, foretells two crowns, and confirms the news with Adan at Glois. Received with music at Joraphas, Gwigalois rests there until Larie is brought from Roimunt, while messengers carry word that the adventure is won.

Si sprâchen 'herre, wir sîn bereit
They spoke 'lord, we are ready

im nâch sîner werdicheit
him after his worthiness

ze dienen als sîn wille gert.
to serve as his will desires.

er ist sô biderbe und sô wert
he is so worthy and so dear

daz er uns niht verderben lât.
that he us not perish lets.

swaz mîn herre ḥie [ge]lâzen hât,
whatever my lord here [l]eft has,

daz nem er gar in sîne pflege.'
that take he wholly into his care.'

sus wîsten si in von dem wege
thus directed they him from the way

und zeicten im silber unde golt.
and showed him silver and gold.

si wurden im von herzen holt
they became to-him from heart devoted

durch sîne tugent reine.
for his virtue pure.

golt und edel[gẹ]steine
gold and noble-gems

des vant er âne mâzen vil;
of-that found he beyond measure much;

dô was ab sîner vreuden zil
then was but of-his joy goal

von im ze verre; daz tet im wê.
from him too far; that did him woe.

geltes engerte er niht mê
of-pay desired he not more

wan daz er sîne âmîen,
except that he his beloved,

die schœnen Lârîen,
the beautiful Larie,

dâ bî im hêt nâch sîner nôt.
there by him had after his distress.

dem grâven Adân er gebôt,
to-the count Adan he commanded,

swaz er dâ guotes vünde,
whatever he there of-goods found,

daz er sichs underwünde
that he himself-of-it took-charge

und ẹz im behielte durch sîn bet;
and it for-him kept for his request;

sus underwant sich an der stet
thus took-charge himself in the place

der grâve alles des dâ was.
the count of-all that there was.

dô giengens ûf den palas.
then went-they up-to the palace.

dâ vunden si den halsberc
there found they the hauberk

und daz heidenische werc
and the heathenish work

dar innę Rôaz wart erslagen;
there in Roaz became slain;

daz hiez der alte grâve tragen
that bade the old count carry

in ein kemenâten von dem wege.
into a chamber from the way.

dô hêt er gar in sîner pflege
then had he wholly in his care

daz hûs und allę die rîcheit
the house and all the richness

diu dâ zesamne was geleit,
which there together was laid,

und swaz diu mûre umbe vie.
and whatever the wall about caught.

mit dem grâven er dô gie
with the count he then went

in eine kemenâten dan;
into a chamber away;

dâ ęntwâfent in der grâve Adân
there unarmed him the count Adan

und wuosch im sîne wunden;
and washed for-him his wounds;

dar nâch wart er gebunden
there after became he bound

mit vil grôzem vlîze wol.
with very great diligence well.

sîn herze wart dâ vreuden vol,
his heart became there of-joys full,

wand er hêt überwunden gar
for he had overcome wholly

swaz im leides ie gewar;
whatever him of-sorrow ever troubled;

diu sældẹ was sîn geleite dar.
the blessedness was his escort thither.

Dô gebunden wart der degen
When bound became the thane

und eine wîle was gelegen
and a while was lain

durch ruowe und einen slâf getet,
for rest and a sleep did,

dô entwachte er und sprach sîn gebet.
then awoke he and spoke his prayer.

er genâdet got vil tougen
he thanked God very secretly

mit wazzerrîchen ougen
with water-rich eyes

der genâden die ẹr an im begie.
for-the graces which he on him performed.

dar nâch er mit dem grâven gie
there after he with the count went

dâ er den tisch gerihtet vant;
where he the table set found;

dô saz er und enbeiz zehant.
then sat he and ate at-once.

der grâvẹ truoc im die spîse dar
the count carried to-him the food there

vil williclîch; dô nam er war
very willingly; then took he heed

daz sîn triuwe und sîn muot
that his faith and his mind

wider in was ganz unde guot;
toward him was whole and good;

dône hêt er dęheinen zwîvel mê.
then had he no doubt more.

im tet niwan der jâmer wê
him did only the grief woe

nâch der mägde wol getân;
after the maiden well made;

der was sîn lîp undertân
to-her was his body subject

mit herzen und mit sinne;
with heart and with mind;

er truoc die wâren minne
he bore the true love

ir mit ganzer stæticheit.
to-her with whole steadfastness.

ouch was si dar an verzeit
also was she there in despaired

daz er iht lebte; daz was ir klage
that he aught lived; that was her lament

in ir muote alle tage,
in her mind all days,

wan si im guoten willen truoc;
for she to-him good will bore;

sîn leit ir an daz herze sluoc,
his sorrow to-her on the heart struck,

des si doch niemen zuo gewuoc.
of-which she yet to-no-one to mentioned.

Als der helt enbizzen was,
When the hero eaten had,

dô gienc er von dem palas
then went he from the palace

durch schouwen vür daz bürgetor;
for looking before the castle-gate;

dâ vant er gesatelt vor
there found he saddled before

ein harte schœne kastelân.
a very beautiful Castilian.

dô bat in der grâve Adân
then begged him the count Adan

dar ûffe erringen sînen muot;
there upon to-lighten his mind;

des volgẹt er im und dûhte in guot.
of-that followed he him and seemed to-him good.

dô er ûf daz ros gesaz,
when he upon the horse sat,

sîns jâmers er ein teil vergaz
of-his grief he a part forgot

und vie ze vreuden niuwen muot,
and caught for joys new spirit,

als der guote rîter tuot
as the good knight does

wen er ze velde kumt geriten
when he to field comes ridden

und er nâch rîterlîchen siten
and he after knightly manners

sîn ros ze rehte ersprenget
his horse to right spurs

und im daz wol verhenget
and to-it that well allows

nâch sînem willen als er wil.
after his will as he will.

dâ hebet sich reht rîterspil
there raises itself right knightly-sport

swâ der vil zesamne kumt
wherever of-them many together comes

den beidiu kunst und ellen vrumt;
whom both art and valor avail;

dâ wirt gehurt unde geslagen,
there becomes charged and struck,

dâ von si mâl müezen tragen
there from they marks must bear

grôzę wunden unde biulen
great wounds and bumps

von swerten und von kiulen;
from swords and from clubs;

ouch wirt verstochen lîhte ein sper
also becomes spent easily a spear

sô dort kumt gevaren her
when there comes fared hither

ein poinder der niht vrides gert.
a charge which no peace desires.

ein kranker zügęl unlange wert
a weak rein not-long lasts

ern brestę von zügen lîhte enzwei.
unless-it burst from pulls easily in-two.

würde genomen ein turnei
should-become taken a tournament

von den ôsterherren ûf daz Sant,
by the eastern-lords upon the Sand,

dâ würde gevaterschaft entrant
there would-become godfathership severed

sô sich die poinder vlæhten
when themselves the charges interwove

und nâch gewinne dæhten.
and after gain thought.

ich hân ir sliche wol ersehen,
I have their tricks well seen,

wie si nâch guote kunnen spehen
how they after goods can spy

sô sich der poinder wirret
when itself the charge tangles

und si diu stat niht irret.
and them the place not hinders.

dâ mac verliesen wol ein man
there may lose well a man

der niht mit rîterschefte kan
who not with knighthood can

swaz er ze velde bringet.
whatever he to field brings.

nu hêt vil wol geringet
now had very well lightened

der junge rîter sînen muot.
the young knight his mind.

daz ros was im vür trûren guot;
the horse was for-him against grieving good;

sîn geverte im niuwe vreude gap.
its gait to-him new joy gave.

er reit ez in den walap
he rode it into the gallop

dar nâch in die rabîne;
there after into the charge;

er liez die schenkel sîne
he let the thighs his

ze rehte vliegen gegen der man.
to right fly toward the mane.

swer nu rîter prüeven kan
whoever now knights judge can

und an in rehten prîs erspehen,
and in them right prize spy,

hêt er den rîter dô gesehen,
had he the knight then seen,

er müese im ganzes prîses jehen.
he must to-him whole prize grant.

Sus reit er gegẹn der burc wider;
Thus rode he toward the castle back;

von dem rosse erbeizter nider
from the horse dismounted-he down

und haftez vür daz bürgetor
and tied-it before the castle-gate

an einer linden ast enbor.
to a linden's branch aloft.

sînen willen hêt ez wol getân.
his will had it well done.

dô gie gegẹn im der grâve Adân,
then went toward him the count Adan,

mit im sehs videlære:
with him six fiddlers:

die wolḍẹn im sîne swære
they would for-him his heaviness

mit videlen vertrîben.
with fiddles drive-away.

dô begunden si ẹz rîben
then began they it to-rub

mit künsticlîchen griffen,
with skillful grips,

unz im was gar entsliffen
until to-him was wholly slipped-away

diu swære von dem herzen sîn,
the heaviness from the heart his,

wan daz ein grôzer jâmers pîn
except that a great grief's pain

versigelt [en]mitten drinne lac
sealed [in]-the-middle there-in lay

des er zallen zîten pflac. 8485
of-which he at-all times practiced.

swie manger hande vreude er sach,
however many kinds of-joy he saw,

sîn herze iedoch des einen jach
his heart yet of-the one said

'mirn wirt nimmer jâmers buoz
'to-me becomes never of-grief remedy

ich enpfâhe ir minne und ir gruoz
I unless-receive her love and her greeting

der güete mir sô nâhen lît.' 8490
whose goodness to-me so near lies.'

ditz was sîn stæticlîcher strît.
this was his steadfast strife.

dô die herren sâhen
when the lords saw

daz diu sunne nâhen
that the sun nearly

ir louf hêt verendet gar,
its course had ended wholly,

dô nâmen si des nebels war 8495
then took they of-the mist heed

den man dâ nider sîgen sach.
which one there down sink saw.

her Gwîgâlois zem grâven sprach
lord Gwigalois to-the count spoke

'heizet den harnasch bringen her,
'bid the harness bring hither,

iuwern schilt und iuwer sper,
your shield and your spear,

und rît[et] ouch selbe mit mir dar.
and ride also self with me there.

ich wil der zît nemen war
I will of-the time take heed

wenne der nebel nider gê.
when the mist down goes.

wir suln daz rat stellen ê.
we shall the wheel stop before.

ich wil ûz ze Joraphas,
I will out to Joraphas,

dâ ich gester morgen was,
where I yesterday morning was,

zem grâven Môrâle.'
to-the count Moral.'

dô nam er dẹheine twâle;
then took he no delay;

er wâfent sich und reit von dan.
he armed himself and rode from thence.

dô volget im der grâve Adân
then followed him the count Adan

zuo dem rade dâ ez gie.
to the wheel where it went.

daz wazzer er dô ûf vie;
the water he then up caught;

zehant gestuont daz selbe rat.
at-once stood-still the same wheel.

den getriuwen grâven er dô bat
the faithful count he then begged

daz er des landes huote;
that he of-the land took-care;

des wolde er im mit guote
for-that would he him with goods

gerne lônen; daz lobt ouch er.
gladly reward; that promised also he.

er sprach ‘herre, iuwer gewer
he spoke ‘lord, your warrant

wil ich des landes gerne sîn.
will I of-the land gladly be.

ich nim daz ûf die triuwe mîn
I take that upon the faith mine

daz ichz iu behalte,
that I-it for-you keep,

wan mich mac mit gewalte
for me may with force

nieman dâ von gescheiden.
no-one there from part.

swie ich sî ein heiden,
however I be a heathen,

ich gestên iu zaller iuwer nôt
I stand-by you in-all your distress

michn irre es dannẹ der bitter tôt.’
unless-me hinder it then the bitter death.’

des gnâdeter ịm und wart sîn vrô.
for-that thanked-he him and became of-it glad.

durch daz tor reit er dô.
through the gate rode he then.

gẹoffent wart diu selbe vart
opened became the same way

diu mit dem rade was bespart
which with the wheel was barred

an der selben stunde.
at the same hour.

der grâve dẹm herren gunde
the count to-the lord granted

mit triuwen grôzer êren.
with faith great honors.

dannen begunder kêren
thence began-he to-turn

die strâze gegen Joraphas.
the road toward Joraphas.

dô kom er dâ erbeizet was
then came he where dismounted was

grâvẹ Môrâl mit den sînen.
count Moral with the his.

sîne triuwe liez er schînen
his faith let he shine

dô er den rîter komen sach.
when he the knight come saw.

wider die sînen er dô sprach
to the his he then spoke

'dort kumt ein rîtèr geriten her!
'there comes a knight ridden hither!

ich wæne wol daz ist der
I believe well that is he

gester morgen von uns schiet.'
yesterday morning from us parted.'

ieslîcher dô besunder riet
each then separately guessed

'nein! der schilt ist im ze glanz,
'no! the shield is to-him too bright,

unverhouwen unde ganz.'
unhewn and whole.'

'dâ ịst ein boie geslagen an
'there is a fetter struck on

von golde; den vüert der grâve Adân
of gold; that carries the count Adan

anders niht wan durch den list
otherwise not except for the reason

daz er ein gevangen ist.'
that he a captive is.'

‘ditz ors ist blanc, daz sîn was rôt.’
‘this steed is white, which his was red.’

‘waz ob er lebet?’ ‘nein, er ist tôt!’
‘what if he lives?’ ‘no, he is dead!’

‘wer weiz daz?’ — nû vuort er daz rat
‘who knows that?’— now carried he the wheel

verhouwen, des sîn herze ie bat;
hewn, of-which his heart ever begged;

dô erkanden si in an der stat.
then knew they him in the place.

Zen orsen si dô sprungen.
To-the horses they then sprang.

dô wart sêre gedrungen,
then became sorely pressed,

gehurt durch sîne liebe dar.
charged for his love thither.

vil schierer der rîter wart gewar
very quickly the knight became aware

daz ez vriunde wâren;
that it friends were;

dône wolde er ir niht vâren.
then would he them not beset.

sîn sper hêt er gesenket nider;
his spear had he lowered down;

daz zuhte er ûf vil gâhes wider.
it drew he up very quickly back.

der grâve Môrâl enpfienc in dô,
the count Moral received him then,

dar nâch die rîter; si wâren vrô
there after the knights; they were glad

daz er sô sigelîche reit.
that he so victoriously rode.

der grâve sprach ‘herre, seit
the count spoke ‘lord, tell

ob ir ze Glois habt gestriten?’
whether you at Glois have fought?’

er sprach mit zühticlîchen siten
he spoke with courteous manners

‘jâ, des ist unlougen.’
‘yes, of-that is no-denial.’

des getriuwen grâven ougen
the faithful count’s eyes

vor vreuden über liefen dô.
from joys over ran then.

er sprach ‘lieber herre, sô
he spoke ‘dear lord, so

sult ir uns wærlîche sagen
shall you to-us truly tell

ob der heiden sî erslagen.’
whether the heathen be slain.’

‘jâ, benamen!’ sprach der degen.
‘yes, assuredly!’ spoke the thane.

‘sîn hôher muot der ist gelegen
‘his high spirit it is laid-low

und sîn gewalt den er begie.’
and his violence which he committed.’

vor liebe er in dô umbe vie
for joy he him then about caught

und kuste in an die hende sîn.
and kissed him on the hands his.

er sprach ‘lieber herre mîn,
he spoke ‘dear lord mine,

nû ist ergangen des ich bat.
now is come-to-pass what I begged.

ouch sol ich hie an dirre stat
also shall I here in this place

mîniu lêhen von iu hân.
my fiefs from you have.

ich wil werden iuwer man
I will become your man

und leisten swes ir, herre, gert,
and perform whatever you, lord, desire,

wand ir sît aller êren wert.
for you are of-all honors worth.

iu hât verdienet iuwer hant
to-you has earned your hand

eine schœne maget und zwei lant;
a beautiful maiden and two lands;

dâ von ir mugt nâch wunsche leben;
there from you may to wish live;

diu Sælde hât iu wol gegeben.
the Blessedness has to-you well given.

ouch wil ich iu vür wâr sagen:
also will I to-you for true tell:

iuwer houbet sol zwô krône tragen:
your head shall two crowns bear:

diu einę hœret ze Korntîn,
the one belongs to Korntin,

diu ander ze Joraphîn;
the other to Joraphin;

daz lant lît an dem lebermer.
the land lies on the clotted-sea.

si sint gwesen mit solher wer
they are been with such defense

sît Rôaz der lande pflac
since Roaz of-the lands took-care

daz sîn gewalt dâ ringe wac.
that his power there light weighed.

si wârn dem künige undertân
they were to-the king subject

dâ von ich ê gesprochen hân,
there of I before spoken have,

den Rôaz der heiden sluoc;
whom Roaz the heathen slew;

die krône er gwalticlîche truoc.
the crown he powerfully bore.

si dienent gerne iuwer hant
they serve gladly your hand

swen in diu wârheit wirt bekant
when to-them the truth becomes known

daz Rôaz erslagen ist.
that Roaz slain is.

herre, nu tuot niht lenger vrist;
lord, now make not longer delay;

enpfâhẹt mich, als ich hân gegert!'
receive me, as I have desired!'

er sprach 'herre, des sît gewert.'
he spoke 'lord, of-that be granted.'

dô wart gevolget sîner bet:
then became followed his request:

er ẹnpfie ịn und lêch hin an der stet
he received him and enfeoffed thither in the place

dạz im sîn vatèr niht lâzen hêt;
what to-him his father not left had;

diu êrẹ die zagen gar vergêt!
the honor the cowards wholly passes!

dô diu rede vẹrendet wart,
when the speech ended became,

der grâve huop sich an die vart,
the count raised himself onto the journey,

er und ein sîn dienestman,
he and a his ministerial,

gegen Glois ûf die plân.
toward Glois upon the plain.

den herren bat er bîten dâ.
the lord begged he wait there.

vür daz tor rante er sâ;
before the gate rode he at-once;

dâ bî habt der grâve Adân;
there by halted the count Adan;

den bat er sich wizzen lân
him begged he himself know let

ob der heiden wære erslagen.
whether the heathen were slain.

er sprach 'jâ! ouch sult ir klagen
he spoke 'yes! also shall you lament

mîner vrouwẹn Japhîten nôt,
my lady Japhite's distress,

diu lac vor leide nâch im tôt.
who lay from sorrow after him dead.

ouch muoz ich von schulden klagen
also must I by right lament

einen künic der lît hie erslagen,
a king who lies here slain,

Gârel von Mirmidône.
Garel of Mirmidon.

in dem selben lône
in the same reward

lît Karrîôz und Marrîên.
lies Karrioz and Marrien.

in des gebot ich hie stên
in whose command I here stand

der daz allez hât getân.
who that all has done.

swâ ich im gedienen kan,
wherever I him serve can,

deiswâr, des ist er unbehert:
truly, of-that is he unrobbed:

sîn manheit mit sælden vert.
his manhood with blessings fares.

er rîtet gegen Joraphas
he rides toward Joraphas

ze̥ iuwerm hûse, dâ e̥r ê was;
to your house, where he before was;

ir sult in wol enpfâhen dâ.'
you shall him well receive there.'

er sprach 'ich tuon.' dô kêrter sâ
he spoke 'I do.' then turned-he at-once

von der hôhen brücke nider
from the high bridge down

ze sînem lieben herren wider.
to his dear lord back.

den helm er im abe bant;
the helm he from-him off bound;

sper, schilt und îsengwant
spear, shield and iron-clothing

hiez er die knappen vüeren dô.
bade he the squires carry then.

si lobten got und wurden vrô
they praised God and became glad

daz im sô wol gelungen was.
that to-him so well succeeded was.

sus kômen si ze Joraphas
thus came they to Joraphas

geriten vür daz bürgetor.
ridden before the castle-gate.

dâ was michel vreude vor
there was great joy before

von manger hande seitspil;
from many-a kind string-music;

man hôrte dâ busûnen vil
one heard there trumpets many

blâsen nâch der heiden sit;
blow after the heathens' manner;

dâ sluogens unde wurfen mit
there struck-they and threw with

die tambûr mit behendicheit;
the drums with nimbleness;

der galm dâ wider ẹịn ander streit
the din there against one other strove

sô daz diu burc al erhal.
so that the castle all resounded.

von dem tor gie her zetal
from the gate went hither down

engegen im diu wirtîn.
toward him the hostess.

si hiez in willekomen sîn
she bade him welcome be

und kuste in an sînen munt.
and kissed him on his mouth.

die andern vrouwen tâtẹn im kunt
the other ladies made to-him known

ir gruoz nâch wîplichem sit.
their greeting after womanly manner.

ob er zuo den vrouwen rit?
whether he to the ladies rode?

nein, er was erbeizet vor.
no, he was dismounted before.

si truogẹn in mit gedrange enbor
they carried him with throng aloft

die in dâ gerne sâhen.
who him there gladly saw.

dâ was grôz enpfâhen
there was great reception

von dem wirte und von den sînen;
from the host and from the his;

si liezen an im schînen
they let on him shine

daz er in liep ze herren was.
that he to-them dear as lord was.

sus ruowẹt er dâ ze Joraphas
thus rested he there at Joraphas

unz daz man sîne âmîen,
until that one his beloved,

die schœnen magt Lârîen,
the beautiful maiden Larie,

brâhte dar von Roimunt.
brought thither from Roimunt.

den vürsten allen tet man kunt
to-the princes all made one known

mit den boten in diu lant,
with the messengers into the lands,

die âventiure hêt entrant
the adventure had undone

von hôher art eins heldes hant.
of high kind a hero's hand.

Messengers summon the princes to a court at Korntin. Count Moral rides to Roimunt with Gwigalois's ring and letter, which Larie reads with joy, and she answers that she will follow him. Her mother Amena leaves Roimunt to her steward, and the household sets out in procession, cooks first, then the ladies, and Larie last on the palfrey he won. Forewarned by the page Schandalec, Gwigalois rides out from Joraphas to meet her.

Den vürsten allen wart enboten,
To-the princes all became sent-word,

beidiu mit brieven und mit boten,
both with letters and with messengers,

daz si kæmen ze Korntîn: 8680
that they should-come to Korntin:

dâ solden sị ze dem hove sîn
there should they at the court be

über sehs wochen.
over six weeks.

sus wart der hof gesprochen
thus became the court proclaimed

über diu lant wîten.
over the lands widely.

loufen unde rîten 8685
to-run and to-ride

hiez man die boten sâ zehant
bade one the messengers straightway at-once

mit den brieven in diu lant.
with the letters into the lands.

der grâve bereite sich dar zuo
the count readied himself there for

daz er des andern morgens vruo
that he of-the next morning early

rit gegen Roimunt.
rode toward Roimunt.

diu mære wurden wîten kunt
the tidings became widely known

daz Rôaz wære erslagen;
that Roaz were slain;

daz hôrtẹ man lützel iemen klagen.
that heard one little anyone lament.

des andern morgẹns der grâvẹ gie
of-the next morning the count went

vür sînen herren, dâ ẹr enpfie
before his lord, where he received

einen brief und sîne botschaft
a letter and his message

als ez sînes herzen kraft
as it his heart's strength

und rehtiu liebe meinde;
and right love meant;

daz er sît wol bescheinde.
that he afterward well showed.

der selbe brief besigelt was
the same letter sealed was

under einem adamas
under a diamond

in ein guldîn vingerlîn;
in a golden little-ring;

der stein solde ein zeichen sîn
the stone should a sign be

sîner stæten minne.
of-his steadfast love.

mit worten und mit sinne
with words and with mind

enbôt er sîner âmîen,
sent-word he to-his beloved,

der schœnen magt Lârîen,
the beautiful maiden Larie,

sînen gruoz und allez guot,
his greeting and all good,

als noch vil dicke ein rîter tuot
as yet very often a knight does

dar er herzeliebe treit
where he heart's-love bears

und der sîn dienest ist bereit.
and to-whom his service is ready.

der grâve nam urloup und schiet dan;
the count took leave and parted away;

mit im sîner dienestman
with him of-his ministerials

driu hundert und ein sîn genôz;
three hundred and one his peer;

der was von gebürte grôz,
he was of birth great,

des grâven sun von Lêodarz;
the count's son of Leodarz;

der was geheizen Bejolarz,
he was called Bejolarz,

sîn muoter Bejolâre,
his mother Bejolare,

diu süeze und diu klâre;
the sweet and the bright;

der bruoder was der grâve Môrâl.
whose brother was the count Moral.

dô nâmen si niht lenger twâl;
then took they no longer delay;

ûz dem lande si dô riten
out-of the land they then rode

nâch der vrouwen; diu hêt erliten
after the lady; she had suffered

vil jâmers nâch dem rîter guot;
much of-grief after the knight good;

des was getrüebet ir der muot
of-that was troubled to-her the mind

und ir herze an vreuden wunt.
and her heart in joys wounded.

sus kâmen si ze Roimunt
thus came they to Roimunt

geriten an dem næhsten tage.
ridden on the next day.

ir grôzen jâmer und ir klage
her great grief and her lament

die boten in benâmen;
the messengers from-them took;

dô si zem hûse kâmen,
when they to-the house came,

si wurden wol enpfangen.
they became well received.

der grâve kom gegangen
the count came walking

vür sîne vrouwẹn Lârîen,
before his lady Larie,

des wunsches amîen.
of-the ideal beloved.

sînen mantel er von im gap.
his mantle he from him gave.

ditz was der rede urhap:
this was the speech's beginning:

‘vrouwe, iu enbiut mîn herre
‘lady, to-you sends my lord

sînen dienest alsô verre,
his service so far,

der den heiden hât erslagen,
who the heathen has slain,

daz ichz sô wol niht kan gesagen
that I-it so well not can tell

als ez sîn herze meinet;
as it his heart means;

daz er iu wol bescheinet
that he to-you well shows

ob ir des, vrouwe, geruochet
if you of-that, lady, deign

sîn dienest gnâde suochet —
his service grace seeks—

und ob er rehtes geniezen sol.
and if he of-right enjoy shall.

sîn hant diu hât verdienet wol
his hand it has earned well

daz iuwer minne im lône:
that your love him rewards:

iuwer lant und iuwer krône
your land and your crown

hât mîn her Gwîgâlois erstriten
has my lord Gwigalois won-by-fighting

und kumbers vil durch iuch erliten.
and of-grief much for you suffered.

er sendet iu ditz vingerlîn;
he sends you this little-ring;

der stein sol ein zeichen sîn
the stone shall a sign be

sîner stæten minne.’
of-his steadfast love.’

dô sach si dạrinne
then saw she there-in

gebrievet durch den adamas
written through the diamond

daz diu maget gerne las.
what the maiden gladly read.

der brief alsus geschriben was:
the letter thus written was:

‘Trôst in mînem leide,
‘Comfort in my sorrow,

des wunsches ougen weide
the ideal's eyes' pasture

sît ir und der sælden spil.
are you and the blessedness's play.

mit liebe ich immer grüezen wil
with love I ever greet will

iuwern minniclîchen lîp.
your lovely body.

ich hân iuch vür älliu wîp
I have you before all women

erwelt mir ze lône.
chosen for-me as reward.

mîner vreuden krône,
of-my joys crown,

vrouwe Lârîe, daz sît ir.
lady Larie, that are you.

nu komet und enpfâhẹt von mir
now come and receive from me

iuwer krône und iuwer lant;
your crown and your land;

daz hât mîn sælde und mîn hant
that has my blessedness and my hand

erlediget und diu gotes kraft.
freed and the God's strength.

triuwe und rehte geselleschaft
faith and right companionship

die leiste ich iu mit stæticheit.
them perform I to-you with steadfastness.

mîn herze iu wâre minne treit.
my heart to-you true love bears.

ich bin als iuwer wille gert. 8775
I am as your will desires.

sî ich sô biderbe und sô wert,
(if)-be I so worthy and so dear,

sô komet unde heilet mich.
so come and heal me.

iuwer gevangen bin ich;
your captive am I;

an mir ligent iuweṛiu bant.'
on me lie your bonds.'

niht mê si dâ geschriben vant. 8780
not more she there written found.

daz golt leit si an die hant.
the gold laid she on the hand.

Ûf stuont diu maget rîche.
Up stood the maiden rich.

vil gezogenlîche
very courteously

neic si des herren botschaft
bowed she to-the lord's message

und antwurt ir vil endehaft. 8785
and answered it very decisively.

si sprach 'gnâde mînes herren;
she spoke 'thanks to-my lord;

im sol unlange werren
him shall not-long trouble

der kumber den er von mir hât;
the grief which he from me has;

ich gibe im helfe unde rât
I give him help and counsel

und mînen lîp ze lône.
and my body as reward.

hêt ich tûsent krône,
had I thousand crowns,

die soldẹn im wesen undertân.
they should to-him be subject.

er hât sô vil durch mich getân
he has so much for me done

daz ichs im gerne lônen wil,
that I-it to-him gladly reward will,

beidiu mit ernste und mit spil,
both with earnest and with play,

swie er sîn geruochet.
however he of-it deigns.

swaz sîn wille suochet
whatever his will seeks

an mir, daz hât er vunden;
in me, that has he found;

ich heile im sîne wunden
I heal for-him his wounds

und gibe im solher minne teil
and give him of-such love part

dâ von sîn herze wirdet geil.
there from his heart becomes merry.

ich wilz nu sprechen überlût:
I will-it now speak aloud:

er was doch mînes herzen trût;
he was yet my heart's darling;

ich hêt in mir ze liebe erkorn;
I had him for-me as love chosen;

er wart ze trôste mir geborn;
he became as comfort to-me born;

wol der muoter diu in [ge]bar;
well for-the mother who him [b]ore;

nâch sînem willẹn ich gerne var
after his will I gladly fare

durch sîne liebe swar er wil;
for his love whither he will;

des gibe ich iu niht lenger zil.
of-that give I you not longer delay.

wil mîn vrouwe, ich bin bereit! 8810
(if)-will my lady, I am ready!

swaz mîn munt iht anders seit,
whatever my mouth aught otherwise says,

daz ist niht mînes herzen wort,
that is not my heart's word,

wan daz hât er bî im dort
for that has he by him there

und ich daz sîne bî mir hie;
and I the his by me here;

der selbe wehsel ergie 8815
the same exchange went

enzwischen uns beiden
between us both

dô wir uns muosen scheiden.'
when we ourselves must part.'

vor vreuden si dô weinde.
for joys she then wept.

diu wârheit daz bescheinde
the truth that showed

daz ir der helt liep was. 8820
that to-her the hero dear was.

si sprach 'ist er ze Joraphas?'
she spoke 'is he at Joraphas?'

der grâve sprach 'vrouwe, jâ.
the count spoke 'lady, yes.

alsô wunder ruowẹt er dâ
so wounded rests he there

und hât uns her nâch iu gesant.'
and has us hither after you sent.'

diu schœne maget gie zehant
the beautiful maiden went at-once

vür ir muoter, die künigîn.
before her mother, the queen.

si sprach 'vrouwe und muoter mîn,
she spoke 'lady and mother mine,

sît uns got erhœret hât,
since us God heard has,

sô ist mîn bet unde mîn rât
so is my request and my counsel

daz wir hie niht lenger sîn;
that we here not longer be;

wir sulen varn zuo Korntîn
we shall fare to Korntin

in daz künicrîche.'
into the kingdom.'

daz lobten dô gelîche
that praised then alike

die dâ gesinde wâren,
who there household were,

wan si in zehen jâren
for they in ten years

daz lant nie gesâhen.
the land never saw.

si begunden alle gâhen
they began all to-hasten

und bereiten sich zer heimvart.
and readied themselves for-the home-journey.

vil manger sprach 'ô wol mich wart,
very many-a-one spoke 'oh well for-me became,

daz ich sol ze lande varn!
that I shall to land fare!

got müeze sînen lîp bewarn
God may his body guard

der uns daz lant gẹoffent hât!'
who for-us the land opened has!'

schœne pfärt und rîchiu wât
beautiful palfreys and rich clothing

den vrouwen wart zer reise brâht.
to-the ladies became for-the journey brought.

belîbens was in ungedâht;
of-remaining was to-them unthought;

der verte wârens alle vrô.
of-the journey were-they all glad.

ûf die soumærẹ luot man dô
upon the pack-horses loaded one then

manger hande rîcheit:
of-many kinds richness:

golt, gesteine, pfelle breit,
gold, gems, brocades broad,

vil gezierde wart darûf geleit.
much adornment became there-upon laid.

Diu altvrouwe Amênâ hiez.
The old-lady Amena was-called.

die burc si mit gedinge liez
the castle she with trust left

ir truhsæzen Azzadac,
to-her steward Azzadac,

der manheit unde triuwen pflac.
who manhood and faith practiced.

sus vuoren si mit vreuden dan.
thus fared they with joys away.

die vart ich niht geprüeven kan
the journey I not judge can

sô wol als si geschicket was.
so well as it arranged was.

von Roimunt ze Joraphas
from Roimunt to Joraphas

die köche riten vür enwec.
the cooks rode before away.

der vrouwen garzûn, Schandalec,
the ladies' page, Schandalec,

der hêt sich nâch in ûz erhaben;
he had himself after them out raised;

sîne gesellen und die knaben
his companions and the boys

die man zer küchen ouch bedarf
whom one in-the kitchen also needs

die truogen kröul die wâren scharf.
they carried hooks which were sharp.

den treip man die soume nâch.
to-them drove one the packs after.

die knappen man dô ziehen sach
the squires one then lead saw

diu ors dar nâch in einer schar;
the steeds there after in one troop;

den volget daz gesinde gar.
them followed the household wholly.

dar nâch die stolzen vrouwen riten;
there after the proud ladies rode;

die vuorten kappen wol gesniten
they wore capes well cut

von brûnem scharlachen.
of brown scarlet.

mit schimpfe und mit lachen
with jest and with laughing

die rîter kurzten in die vart.
the knights shortened for-them the journey.

ie zwein ein vrouwe bevolhen wart
ever to-two a lady commended became

der si mit vlîze pflâgen.
of-whom they with diligence took-care.

sîne dorfte niht betrâgen
she needed not to-weary

der schimpflîchen mære;
of-the jesting tales;

verswunden was ir swære
vanished was their heaviness

und ir vreude ûf gestigen.
and their joy up risen.

zwô busûne selten swigen;
two trumpets seldom fell-silent;

die blies man daz engegen hal
them blew one that against echoed

beidiu berge unde tal.
both hills and dale.

sus vuoren si mit rîcheit.
thus fared they with richness.

nâch der schar hinden reit
after the troop behind rode

des wunsches âventiure,
the ideal's adventure,

der sælden krêatiure,
the blessedness's creature,

vrouwe Lârîę, der vreuden kranz.
lady Larie, the joys' garland.

ir gereite was von golde glanz
her harness was of gold bright

und von gesteine lieht gevar;
and of gems light colored;

sus glast ez wider eịnander gar.
thus gleamed it against one-another wholly.

den sitích man ir ze næhist zôch
the parrot one to-her at nearest drew

diu wîbes missewende vlôch.
who woman's blemish fled.

daz schœne pfärt diu maget reit
the beautiful palfrey the maiden rode

als ez her Gwîgâlois erstreit
as it lord Gwigalois won-by-fighting

mit rîterschefte ûf einer plân,
with knighthood upon a plain,

dâ von er grôzen prîs gewan.
there from he great prize won.

eine kappen vuortẹ diu maget guot
a cape wore the maiden good

von pfelle; rôt als ein bluot
of brocade; red as a blood

was daz golt drîn geweben;
was the gold there-in woven;

die hêt ir grâvẹ Môrâl gegeben
it had to-her count Moral given

ze stiure zuo ir heimvart,
as help to her home-journey,

diu im sît wol vergolten wart;
which to-him afterward well repaid became;

dâ was gefurrieret în
there was lined in

ein veder wîz härmîn;
a fur white of-ermine;

dâ vor ein zobel zę rehte breit;
there before a sable to right broad;

ûf die kappen wârn geleit
upon the cape were laid

borten mit gesteine.
braids with gems.

ouch vuortę diu maget reine
also wore the maiden pure

ûf ir houbet einen huot;
upon her head a hat;

der was von pfâvedern guot
it was of peacock-feathers good

mit rôtem golde wol durchleit.
with red gold well laced-through.

ir muoter nâhen bî ir reit;
her mother near by her rode;

die zoumte hovelîche
her led-by-the-bridle courteously

Bejolarz der rîche.
Bejolarz the rich.

ir pfärt was swarz und ir gewant;
her palfrey was black and her clothing;

dâ bî der jâmer was bekant
there by the grief was known

den si nâch ir gesellen truoc,
which she after her companion bore,

den Rôaz der heiden sluoc;
whom Roaz the heathen slew;

aller vreuden si verpflac
of-all joys she forsook

sît daz ir vreude an im gelac.
since that her joy on him lay.

Môrâl der grâve zoumte dô
Moral the count led-by-the-bridle then

vrouwen Lârîẹn und was des vrô
lady Larie and was of-that glad

daz si sô rehte schœne was.
that she so right beautiful was.

sus brâhte er si ze Joraphas
thus brought he her to Joraphas

mit vreuden in ir eigen lant,
with joys into her own land,

dâ si den helt mit vreuden vant;
where she the hero with joys found;

des twanc in grôzer liebe kraft.
to-that compelled him great love's strength.

er was mit sîner [ge]selleschaft
he was with his [c]ompany

ûz ze velde gegẹn in komen,
out to field toward them come,

wand er die botschaft hêt vernomen
for he the message had heard

von ir garzûne Schandalec.
from their page Schandalec.

der was an loufe alsô quec
he was in running so quick

daz er vor in daz botenbrôt
that he before them the messenger's-reward

enpfie, dâ mit er sîne nôt
received, there with he his distress

überwant mit rîcheit.
overcame with richness.

her Gwîgâlois mit vreuden reit
lord Gwigalois with joys rode

von Joraphas ûf die plân
from Joraphas onto the plain

engegẹn der mägde wol getân;
toward the maiden well made;

der was sîn lîp undertân.
to-her was his body subject.

XXXI · THE PRINCES COME

Larie arrives in her beauty; Gwigalois greets her, she gives him herself and her land, and her mother hands him her bridle. The knights joust on the road, and at Joraphas the hostess receives the ladies; Gwigalois keeps from Larie until their marriage. King Rial of Jeraphin comes on elephants to receive his kingdom, three princes of Medarie mourn their lord, whom Gwigalois slew at Roimunt, and Queen Elamie brings twelve maidens in men's clothes led by Marine. Two heathen kings come for their sister Japhite and find her already buried.

Mit im vil stolzer rîter riten, 8940
With him very proud knights rode,

die ouch des vil kûme erbiten
who also of-that very hardly awaited

daz si ir vrouwen solden sehen.
that they their lady should see.

der schœne muose er prîses jehen
to-the fair-one must he prize grant

swer ir lîp ie gesach;
whoever her body ever saw;

dar zuo was ir herzen dach 8945
there to was her heart's roof

gewizzen, scham und güete;
wisdom, modesty and goodness;

ir antlütze daz blüete
her face that bloomed

als ein rôse wol gevar;
as a rose well colored;

ir lîp was âne wandel gar.
her body was without flaw entirely.

diu sælde ir ouch mit vlîze pflac.
the blessedness of-her also with diligence tended.

ir beider jâmer dâ gelac
their both grief there subsided

dô si her Gwîgâlois ersach.
when her lord Gwigalois saw.

sîn munt ûz grôzen vreuden sprach
his mouth out-of great joys spoke

'ô wol mich wart, vil lieber got!
'oh well for-me became, very dear God!

mir hât dîn helfe und dîn gebot
to-me has thy help and thy command

dise magt ze vreuden brâht.
this maiden to joys brought.

des ich mir selbẹ niht hêt gedâht,
of-what I to-me self not had thought,

daz hâstu mir gevüeget.
that hast-thou to-me arranged.

der êren mich genüeget
of-the honors me suffices

die du mir, herre, hâst gegeben,
that thou to-me, lord, hast given,

und læstu mir ze vreuden leben
and (if)-lettest-thou to-me to joy live

dise maget wol getân,
this maiden well made,

die ich mir ze trôste hân
whom I to-me for comfort have

erkoren und ze vreuden gar.'
chosen and for joys entirely.'

vor liebe wart er missevar
for love became he discolored

dô er zuo ir kam geriten;
when he to her came ridden;

diu minnẹ sîn herze hêt versniten.
the love his heart had cut.

ir schœniu varwe ouch wandel nam;
her beautiful color also change took;

ir wîplîch kiusche und ir scham
her womanly chastity and her modesty

machte si rôt und dar nâch bleich.
made her red and there after pale.

ir ganziu varwe ir entweich
her whole color from-her withdrew

dô si den helt bî ir sach,
when she the hero by her saw,

der vil minniclîche sprach
who very lovingly spoke

'Lârîe, liebiu vrouwe mîn,
'Larie, dear lady mine,

ir sult mir willekomen sîn
you shall to-me welcome be

ze trôstẹ nâch mînem leide.
for comfort after my sorrow.

mîns herzen ougen weide
my heart's eyes' pasture

sît ir und mîner vreuden kraft.
are you and of-my joy strength.

stæte und rehte geselleschaft
constancy and true companionship

die sult ir mir erzeigen.
them shall you to-me show.

ich wil mit dienest neigen
I will with service bow

mînen lîp in iuwẹr gebot,
my body into your command,

wand ich hân iuch mir nâch got
for I have you to-me after God

zeiner gebieterinne erkorn.
to-a mistress chosen.

mîn arbeit ist niht verlorn
my toil is not lost

ob iuwer minnẹ mir lônen wil.'
if your love to-me reward will.'

dô wart im gedanket vil
then became to-him thanked much

von der mägde wol getân.
by the maiden well made.

si sach in guetlîche an,
she looked him kindly at,

wan si truoc im holden muot.
for she bore to-him gracious mind.

si sprach 'mîn lîp und ouch mîn guot
she spoke 'my body and also my goods

daz sol iu, lieber herre mîn,
that shall to-you, dear lord mine,

immer undertænic sîn.
ever subject be.

krône, zepter und mîn lant
crown, scepter and my land

daz hât erledigẹt iuwer hant;
that has freed your hand;

des ich iu gerne lônen wil
for-which I to-you gladly reward will

beidiu mit ernest und mit spil
both with earnest and with play

nâch iuwerm willen als ir gert;
after your will as you desire;

iuwẹr werder prîs ist lônes wert.
your worthy prize is of-reward worth.

ir sult iuch underwinden mîn; 9000
you shall yourself take-charge of-me;

in iuwer pflege wil ich sîn,
in your care will I be,

ich und mîn gesinde gar.'
I and my household entire.'

vrouwe Amênâ reichte im dar
lady Amena handed to-him there

ir tohter zoum mit der hant;
her daughter's bridle with the hand;

her Gwîgâlois sich underwant 9005
lord Gwigalois himself took-charge

alrêrst sîner amîen,
first of-his beloved,

der schœnen magt Lârîen;
the beautiful maiden Larie;

des wart er herzenlîche vrô.
of-that became he heartily glad.

gegẹn der burc reit er dô
toward the castle rode he then

mit vrœlîchem schalle. 9010
with joyful noise.

die rîter begunden alle
the knights began all

vor ir buhurdieren
before her to-joust

mit rîchen banieren.
with rich banners.

von hurtę die schilte gâben schal
from charge the shields gave noise

sô daz manic knie geswal
so that many-a knee swelled

von hurte und von gedrenge.
from charge and from crush.

diu strâze wart vil enge
the street became very narrow

von der edeln rîterschaft.
from the noble knighthood.

dâ wart zebrochen manic schaft
there became broken many-a shaft

von slegen und von hurte enzwei.
from blows and from charge in-two.

ez wære worden ein turnei,
it would-be become a tournament,

hêten sị ir harnasch gehabet.
had they their harness had.

desn wirt iu dehein eit gestabet:
of-that becomes to-you no oath dictated:

dâ was vil manic rîter guot,
there was very many-a knight good,

dem sô hôhe stuont sîn muot
to-whom so high stood his mind

von den vrouwen die dâ riten
from the ladies who there rode

daz si nach rîterlîchen siten
that they after knightly customs

diu ors mit hurte umbe triben,
the steeds with charge about drove,

unz in niht vil was beliben
until to-them not much was remained

der schilte ganz an dem spil.
of-the shields whole at the game.

ouch was dâ spilliute vil,
also was there of-minstrels many,

die ir kunst [ouch] uobten dâ.
who their art [also] practiced there.

zwô busûne blies man sâ
two trumpets blew one at-once

vil krefticlîche vor dem tor.
very mightily before the gate.

man vant dâ michel vreude vor
one found there great joy before

von dem liute daz dâ was.
from the people that there was.

sus brâhtę der helt ze Joraphas
thus brought the hero to Joraphas

die magt mit grôzer hêrschaft.
the maiden with great lordliness.

aller vreuden überkraft
of-all joys excess

vunden sị nâch ir willen dâ.
found they after their will there.

ir juncvrouwen enpfie dô sâ
her young-ladies received then at-once

vrou Bêlêârę, diu wirtîn,
lady Beleare, the hostess,

dar nâch die zwô künigîn.
there after the two queens.

die vrouwen vuorte sị von dem wege
the ladies led she from the way

in ir heimlîche pflege,
into her private care,

dâ in allez guot geschach
where to-them all good happened

und nâch ir willen guot gemach;
and after their will good comfort;

der handelungẹ man prîses jach.
of-the entertainment one prize granted.

Her Gwîgâlois durch sîne zuht
Lord Gwigalois through his breeding

vermeit der wâren minne vruht,
shunned of-the true love's fruit,

daz er ir minne niene pflac
so-that he of-her love never tended

noch bî der schœnen nie gelac
nor by the fair-one never lay

unz daz er si ze stæte nam.
until that he her for constancy took.

dô diu zît des hoves kam,
when the time of-the court came,

die vürsten riten in daz lant
the princes rode into the land

nâch den der helt hêt gesant.
after whom the hero had sent.

Rîâl, der kunic von Jeraphîn,
Rial, the king of Jeraphin,

kom mit den gesellen sîn
came with the companions his

gevaren vrümiclîche;
traveled valiantly;

er woldę sîn künicrîche
he would his kingdom

enpfâhen von des heldes hant
receive from the hero's hand

der den heiden überwant.
who the heathen overcame.

vür Korntîn ûf daz velt
before Korntin onto the field

wart vil manic hôch gezelt
became very many-a high tent

von pfelle geslagen ûf daz gras.
of brocade pitched upon the grass.

swaz volkes mit dem künige was
whatever of-people with the king was

gevarn von sînem lande,
traveled from his land,

die riten helfande,
they rode elephants,

als uns diu âventiure giht.
as to-us the adventure says.

daz selbe lant hât rosse niht,
that same land has horses not,

niwan helfande;
except elephants;

die ziehents in dem lande.
those raise-they in the land.

der brâhtę der künic zweinzic dar.
of-those brought the king twenty there.

die truogen sîn gesinde gar,
they carried his household entire,

dar zuo grôze rîcheit:
there to great richness:

zobelbelge und pfelle breit,
sable-pelts and brocades broad,

härmîn, bunt unde grâ;
ermine, vair and gray;

niht ander kleider vint man dâ;
not other clothes finds one there;

des brâhtẹ der künic wunder dar.
of-that brought the king wonder there.

ouch kom geriten eịn ander schar
also came ridden an other troop

vür daz hûs ze Korntîn: —
before the house at Korntin:—

an den was grôz[er] jâmer schîn —
on them was great grief visible—

drî vürsten rîche und wol bekant.
three princes rich and well known.

Medârîe hiez ir lant;
Medarie was-called their land;

von danne wâren si geborn.
from thence were they born.

ir herren hêten si verlorn
their lord had they lost

ûf dem gevilde bî Roimunt;
on the field by Roimunt;

er wart von einer joste wunt
he became from a joust wounded

mit eịnẹm sper von Angran
with a spear from Angran

sô sêre daz der werde man
so sorely that the worthy man

sich dem tôde muose ergeben.
himself to-the death must surrender.

ich sagiu wer im nam daz leben:
I tell-you who from-him took the life:

her Gwîgâlois, der wîgant.
lord Gwigalois, the fighter.

der herre wart mir sus genant:
the lord became to-me thus named:

der werde künic Schaffilûn;
the worthy king Schaffilun;

Medârîe und Belakûn,
Medarie and Belakun,

diu lant wârẹn im undertân.
the lands were to-him subject.

sus verlôs der werde man
thus lost the worthy man

an rîterschefte sînen lîp.
in knighthood his life.

den solden klagen älliu wîp:
him should lament all women:

sîn dienst in allen was bereit.
his service to-them all was ready.

durch [die] vrouwen Lârîẹn er reit
for [the] lady Larie he rode

die âventiure erwerben;
the adventure win;

ein jost diu lêrte in sterben
a joust that taught him die

ûf dem gevilde bî Roimunt.
on the field by Roimunt.

den selben vürsten was unkunt
to-the same princes was unknown

daz ir herre wart erslagen,
that their lord became slain,

wan diez in wider solden sagen,
for those-who-it to-them back should tell,

die muosẹn ir sicherheit bewarn;
they must their surety keep;

ze Britanje wâren si gevarn,
to Britain were they traveled,

als in her Gwîgâlois gebôt.
as to-them lord Gwigalois commanded.

die vürsten klagtẹn ir herren tôt
the princes lamented their lord's death

offenlîche und tougen,
openly and secretly,

mit vliezenden ougen.
with flowing eyes.

si riten pfärt diu wâren kranc.
they rode palfreys that were weak.

ir hâr und ir berte lanc,
their hair and their beards long,

ungeschorn und ungetwagen.
unshorn and unwashed.

ûf ir schilte wârn geslagen
on their shields were struck

bâre von rôtem golde,
biers of red gold,

dâ bî man sehen solde
there by one see should

daz ir herre was erslagen;
that their lord was slain;

sus sach man si den künic klagen
thus saw one them the king lament

mit herzenlîcher riuwe.
with heartfelt rue.

daz schuof ir grôziu triuwe;
that made their great faith;

ir klage diu was niuwe.
their lament that was new.

Dar kom vrouwẹ Êlamîe geriten,
There came lady Elamie ridden,

durch die der helt hêt gestriten,
for whom the hero had fought,

her Gwîgâlois, der werde man,
lord Gwigalois, the worthy man,

der er daz pfärt wider gewan,
to-whom he the palfrey back won,

als ich dâ vor hân geseit.
as I there before have said.

diu kom mit grôzer rîcheit
she came with great richness

gevaren und mit grôzer kraft.
traveled and with great force.

vil werde geselleschaft
very worthy company

vuorte diu maget rîche:
led the maiden rich:

zwelf mägde sûberlîche,
twelve maidens neat,

wol gekleit unde geriten;
well clad and mounted;

niht nâch wîplîchen siten:
not after womanly customs:

si vuorten mannes kleider an
they wore man's clothes on

und hêtenz ofte guot getân
and had-it often well done

an manger rîterschefte
in many-a knightly-deed

mit wîplîcher krefte.
with womanly strength.

vil schœniu ors zôch man vor in.
very beautiful steeds led one before them.

vrouwe Êlamîe, diu künigin,
lady Elamie, the queen,

brâhtę die wünniclîchen schar
brought the delightful troop

in ir geselleschefte dar.
in her company there.

si wârn von Âlârîe geborn
they were from Alarie born

und hêten ir wîpheit verkorn
and had their womanhood renounced

und rîterschaft an sich genomen.
and knighthood on themselves taken.

ich sagiu wâ von daz was komen:
I tell-you where from that was come:

diu ir aller vrouwe was,
she-who of-them all lady was,

der en wart vor Dômas
of-whom grandfather became before Domas

gevangen an einęm strîte.
captured in a battle.

nâch dem selben zîte
after the same time

nam si an sich rîters leben;
took she on herself knight's life;

des wart ir hôher prîs gegeben.
of-that became to-her high prize given.

si was ein maget wol getân.
she was a maiden well made.

ir en hiez der grâve Adân,
of-them grandfather was-called the count Adan,

den Rôaz der heiden vie
whom Roaz the heathen caught

dâ schœniu rîterschaft ergie.
where fine knighthood took-place.

an einer schumpfentiure
in a rout

valt in der ungehiure
felled him the monstrous-one

hinder dạz ors; daz was im leit;
behind the steed; that was to-him grievous;

und nam dâ sîne sicherheit
and took there his surety

als ich iu dâ vor hân geseit.
as I to-you there before have said.

Diu schœne magt Marîne hiez.
The beautiful maiden Marine was-called.

deheine rîterschaft sị enliez
no knighthood she left

dâ man prîs solde bejagen,
where one prize should win,

man müesẹ von ir getât dâ sagen
one must of her deed there tell

und von ir gesellen.
and of her companions.

si kunde wol gevellen
she could well fell

mit rehter jost die rîter nider.
with right joust the knights down.

beidiu vor des und ouch sider
both before that and also since

an rîterschefte ir magetuom
in knighthood her maidenhood

bejaget rîterlîchen ruom.
won knightly fame.

si was ir guotes milte.
she was of-her goods generous.

ûf kleidern und ûf schilte
on clothes and on shield

truoc si lewen guldîn.
bore she lions golden.

vrouwe Êlamîe, diu künigîn,
lady Elamie, the queen,

vuor nâch wîplîchem sit;
traveled after womanly custom;

dem volgten rîche vürsten mit,
to-that followed rich princes with,

grâven unde herzogen.
counts and dukes.

si was dar an niht betrogen
she was there in not deceived

sine hêt rîcheit genuoc.
unless-she had richness enough.

ze Tŷrô si [die] krône truoc;
at Tyro she [the] crown bore;

über al daz künicrîche
over all the kingdom

gebôt si gwalticlîche.
commanded she mightily.

si was ein maget, niht ein wîp,
she was a maiden, not a woman,

und wolde des rîters lîp
and would the knight's body

mit ir schœne erworben hân
with her beauty won have

der ir daz pfärt wider gewan.
who to-her the palfrey back won.

dô was mîn vrouwe Lârîe,
then was my lady Larie,

des wunsches âmîe,
of-the ideal beloved,

an wîbes schœne wandels bar;
in woman's beauty of-flaw bare;

ir grôziu schœne erlaschte gar
her great beauty extinguished entirely

aller wîbe schœne.
of-all women beauty.

die schellẹn gâben gedœne
the bells gave sound

an vrouwẹn Êlamîẹn gereite,
on lady Elamie's harness,

geworht mit arbeite
wrought with toil

von goldẹ vil meisterlîche.
of gold very masterfully.

diu küniginne rîche
the queen rich

erbeizte an einer wisen dâ
dismounted on a meadow there

vür daz hûs; dô vant si sâ
before the house; then found she at-once

ir gezelte ûf geslagen
her tent up pitched

von samîte, dạz hêt getragen
of samite, that had carried

ein starkiu olbende dar:
a strong camel there:

die snüere wârn von sîden gar;
the cords were of silk entirely;

dạrûffe stuont ein guldîn ar.
thereupon stood a golden eagle.

Dar kômen von der heidenschaft
There came from the heathendom

geriten mit grôzer kraft
ridden with great force

zwêne künige ûz Asîâ;
two kings out-of Asia;

die wolden ir swester dâ,
they would their sister there,

die getriuwen Japhîten, holn,
the faithful Japhite, fetch,

die in der tôt hêt verstoln.
whom from-them the death had stolen.

dô ditz jæmerlîche leit
when this lamentable sorrow

den edeln künigen wart geseit,
to-the noble kings became told,

si huoben sich mit klage dar.
they raised themselves with lament there.

ir herze wurden vreuden bar;
their hearts became of-joy bare;

daz si wol bescheinden:
that they well showed:

si klagten unde weinden,
they lamented and wept,

als ir triuwe in gebôt,
as their faith to-them commanded,

des vil reinen wîbes tôt.
the very pure woman's death.

die künige hiezen beide,
the kings were-called both,

als ich iu hie bescheide,
as I to-you here declare,

Zaradech und Panschavar.
Zaradech and Panschavar.

ûf die rede kômen sị dar
upon the purpose came they there

daz si daz vil getriuwe wîp,
that they the very faithful woman,

der süezen vrouwẹn Japhîten lîp,
the sweet lady Japhite's body,

mit in gevüeret wolden haben.
with them led would have.

dô was ir reiner lîp begraben
then was her pure body buried

und mit gezierde bestatet sô
and with adornment interred so

daz sis ze sehen wâren vrô.
that they-of-it to see were glad.

vür wâr wil ich iu sagen daz:
for true will I to-you say that:

wart ie dẹhein wîp bestatet baz,
(if)-became ever any woman interred better,

daz wil ich lâzen âne haz.
that will I let without hatred.

At the court Larie rides in beauty beside Gwigalois, and the princes receive them and bring them to Korntin for twelve days of feasting. Marine carries a crown before the crowned Larie, Rial bears Gwigalois's sword, and Count Moral the dragon-lance; Larie gives herself and her land to Gwigalois, Rial gives her to him in marriage, and she crowns him. After the wedding night, at the mass, a bishop's sermon converts Count Adan, who is baptized with Marine and her maidens, and Rial receives his land in fief.

Ouch kâmen ûz der heidenschaft
Also came out-of the heathendom

durch vreude und durch rîterschaft
for joy and for knighthood

herzogen unde grâven vil.
dukes and counts many.

Korntîn, der vreuden zil,
Korntin, the joys' goal,

wart daz hûs dâ genant,
became the house there named,

wan man dâ zallen zîten vant
for one there at-all times found

vreude nâch des herzen gir —
joy after the heart's desire—

sus sagt diu âventiure mir —
thus tells the adventure me—

sît daz sîn begunde pflegen
since that of-it began to-take-care

Gwîgâlois, der werde degen,
Gwigalois, the worthy thane,

und mîn vrouwe Lârîe.
and my lady Larie.

der zweier kurtosîe
of-the two courtesy

sich zem wunsche hêt geweten;
itself to-the ideal had yoked;

si wâren ninder ûz getreten;
they were nowhere out stepped;

ir zuht stuont an der mâzen zil;
their breeding stood at the measure's goal;

des wurden si geprîset vil. 9250
of-that became they praised much.

dô si zem hove wâren komen,
when they to-the court were come,

der namen ir wol habt vernomen,
whose names you well have heard,

und der ich niht genennen kan,
and whom I not name can,

dô mohte man schouwen ûf der plân
then could one behold on the plain

vil manic hêrlîch gezelt; 9255
very many-a lordly tent;

dâ was rîcheite gelt
there was of-richness payment

wider einander gekêret.
against one-another turned.

diu velt wârn gehêret
the fields were adorned

mit banieren und mit schilten.
with banners and with shields.

die edeln rîter spilten 9260
the noble knights played

aller hande rîterspil.
of-all kinds knightly-game.

man vant dâ kurzewîle vil,
one found there pastime much,

als des mannes muot was.
as the man's mind was.

her Gwîgâlois von Joraphas
lord Gwigalois of Joraphas

mit schalle küniclîche reit
with noise kingly rode

und manic rîter gemeit,
and many-a knight merry,

wol gekleit unde geriten.
well clad and mounted.

ob rîterschaft dâ würdẹ vermiten?
whether knighthood there were avoided?

nein, deiswâr! si tâtenz dâ
no, truly! they did-it there

verre baz dan anderswâ,
far better than elsewhere,

wan dâ reit der sælden spil,
for there rode the blessedness's play,

der schœne ich niht gelîchen wil,
to-whose beauty I nothing liken will,

diu süeze magt Lârîe,
the sweet maiden Larie,

des wunsches âmîe.
of-the ideal beloved.

âvoy, wie stolzlîch si reit!
avoy, how proudly she rode!

mit rôtem samît gekleit
in red samite clad

was diu maget wol getân;
was the maiden well made;

dâ ẹngegẹn ir munt von rœte bran
there against her mouth from redness burned

als ein vil edel rubîn.
as a very noble ruby.

an ir schœne was wol schîn
on her beauty was well visible

daz ir der wunsch gedâhte:
that of-her the ideal thought:

got si zer werlte brâhte
God her to-the world brought

dô ze vreuden stuont sîn muot.
when to joys stood his mind.

ezn gebluotẹ nie schœner bluot
it bloomed never more-beautiful bloom

dan ir antlütze lieht.
than her face bright.

mîn herze kan erdenken nieht
my heart can devise not

noch si mîn munt geprîsen sô
nor her my mouth praise so

sine wære verre schœner dô
unless-she were far more-beautiful then

si zem hove kom geriten;
she to-the court came ridden;

zwô liehte varwe an ir striten:
two bright colors in her strove:

rôt und wîz alsam ein snê;
red and white as a snow;

doch behabtẹ diu rœte ir strîtes mê,
yet kept the redness of-their strife more,

wand ez was in der sumerzît
for it was in the summertime

sô diu hitze rœte gît.
when the heat redness gives.

bî ir reit der werde degen,
by her rode the worthy thane,

des pflac der wâre gotes segen,
of-whom took-care the true God's blessing,

her Gwîgâlois, der triuwen stam.
lord Gwigalois, the faith's stem.

von sîner manheit was sîn nam
from his manhood was his name

gebreitet als der sunnen schîn.
spread as the sun's shine.

sîn herze truoc vil hôhen pîn
his heart bore very high pain

nâch der mägde wol getân,
after the maiden well made,

daz er si muose sehen an
that he her must look at

und doch ir minne niene pflac.
and yet of-her love never tended.

vil gelîch ir beider minne wac;
very alike their both love weighed;

diu herzeliebe under in zwein
the heart's-love between them two

alsô gesamet wart enein;
so gathered became in-one;

daz sît wol an ir stæte schein.
that afterward well in their constancy showed.

Die vürsten und ir dienestman
The princes and their vassals

die in wâren undertân
who to-them were subject

enpfiengen wol den werden degen,
received well the worthy thane,

der des landes solde pflegen,
who of-the land should take-care,

und ir rehte vrouwen.
and their rightful lady.

man mohte wunder schouwen
one could wonder behold

von der vreude die man dâ vant.
from the joy that one there found.

dâ was mit vreuden gar daz lant,
there was with joys wholly the land,

iegelîch volc nâch sînem sit.
each people after its custom.

dâ bliesen busûnæ̣re mit
there blew trumpeters with-it

in vier enden ûf der plân.
in four ends on the plain.

dâ wart diu rîterschaft getân
there became the knighthood done

die man wol prîsen mohte;
that one well praise might;

dehein zage niht entohte
any coward nothing availed

under der tugenthaften schar,
among the virtuous troop,

wan dâ wârn die besten gar
for there were the best all

von allem dem rîche.
from all the realm.

die enpfiengen rîterlîche
they received knightly

den herren und die künigîn.
the lord and the queen.

sus brâhtę man si ze Korntîn
thus brought one them to Korntin

mit rîterlîchem schalle.
with knightly noise.

des vreuten si sich alle
of-that rejoiced they themselves all

die zem lande hôrten;
who to-the land belonged;

mit vreuden si dô stôrten
with joys they then destroyed

ir vil jæmerlîche tage,
their very lamentable days,

die si mit riuwiclîcher klage
which they with rueful lament

hêten gehabt wol zehen jâr;
had had well ten years;

die verkêrten sich nu gar
they turned themselves now wholly

ze vreuden von ir zweier ê.
to joys from their two's marriage.

dône wart dâ niht gebiten mê,
then became there not waited more,

diu vrouwe vuor an ir gemach.
the lady went to her chamber.

her Gwîgâlois zen gesten sprach
lord Gwigalois to-the guests spoke

sînen gruoz vil minniclîche
his greeting very lovingly

und bat si alle gelîche
and bade them all alike

im dâ willekomen sîn.
to-him there welcome be.

sus besaz dô Korntîn
thus possessed then Korntin

her Gwîgâlois mit rîcheit.
lord Gwigalois with richness.

dâ was solch wirtschaft bereit
there was such feasting ready

die ich niht wol kan gesagen.
which I not well can tell.

nach sînem willen zuo zwelf tagen
after his will for twelve days

beliben die vürsten dâ.
remained the princes there.

zwei herhorn blies man sâ
two war-horns blew one at-once

vil krefticlîche vor dem tor.
very mightily before the gate.

alle die dâ wâren vor,
all those-who there were before,

die kômen ûf den palas,
they came up-to the palace,

vrouwe Lârîe ouch komen was,
lady Larie also come was,

gekrœnet als ein keiserîn.
crowned as an empress.

ein ander krône guldîn
an other crown golden

truoc vor ir vrouwe Marîne,
bore before her lady Marine,

diu in rîters schîne
who in knight's guise

hêt vil reinen magetuom,
had very pure maidenhood,

wan daz diu vrouwe durch ir ruom
except that the lady for her fame

wolde versuochen rîters leben.
would try knight's life.

si kunde wol nâch êren geben
she could well after honors give

und mit zühten wesen vrô.
and with breeding be glad.

ir kiusche behielt sị alsô
her chastity kept she so

daz diu nie besprochen wart;
that it never spoken-against became;

sus was ir wîpheit bewart
thus was her womanhood guarded

âne valsch unz an die zît
without falsehood until to the time

daz si zer ê sich habte sît;
that she to-the marriage herself held since;

des was ir ganzez lop vil wît.
of-that was her whole praise very wide.

Rîâl, der künic von Jeraphîn,
Rial, the king of Jeraphin,

sît ez sîn reht solde sîn,
since it his right should be,

nam des jungen rîters swert,
took the young knight's sword,

des eckẹ der êren hêt gegert
whose edge of-the honor had desired

daz manz sô werdiclîche truoc,
that one-it so worthily bore,

dô ez den starken heiden sluoc,
when it the strong heathen slew,

daz ez von sînen slegen nie
that it from his blows never

deheiner slahte mâl enpfie;
of-any kind mark received;

daz truoger vor der vrouwen bar.
that bore-he before the lady bare.

und die glavîe bluotvar
and the lance blood-colored

der grâve Môrâl vor ir truoc
the count Moral before her bore

dâ mit er den wurm sluoc
there with he the dragon slew

der grôzen mort hêt getân
who great murder had done

an vil mangem werden man
on very many-a worthy man

und sô verwuost hêt daz lant
and so laid-waste had the land

daz man da wênic liute vant;
that one there few people found;

des wart der helt geprîset vil.
of-that became the hero praised much.

vrouwe Lârîę, der sælden spil,
lady Larie, the blessedness's play,

gegęn im mit hôhem muote gie.
toward him with high spirit went.

bî der hant si in gevie
by the hand she him caught

dem man sô hôhes prîses jach.
to-whom one so high prize granted.

widęr in si minniclîche sprach
toward him she lovingly spoke

'her Gwîgâlois, mîn amîs,
'lord Gwigalois, my beloved,

sît ir nu tragt den hœhsten prîs
since you now bear the highest prize

von iuwer ellenthafter hant,
from your valiant hand,

sô nemt die krône und mîn lant
so take the crown and my land

und mînen lîp in iuwẹr gebot.
and my body into your command.

herre, ich hân iuch mir nâch got
lord, I have you to-me after God

ze trôste mînem lîbe erkorn;
for comfort to-my body chosen;

swaz ich vreuden hân verlorn,
whatever I of-joys have lost,

der mugt ir wol ergetzen mich.
of-that may you well recompense me.

herre, nu tuot alsô daz ich
lord, now do so that I

und ir mit triuwen sîn enein
and you with faith be at-one

sô daz diu herzẹ under uns zwein
so that the hearts between us two

stæte liebe einander tragen.
constant love to-one-another bear.

des leit ich wil mit leide klagen
whose sorrow I will with sorrow lament

und des vreude ich vrô wil sîn,
and of-whose joy I glad will be,

daz sît ir; ich tuon iu schîn
that are you; I make to-you visible

daz iuwer minnẹ mir nâhen gêt.
that your love to-me near goes.

in iuwẹrm gebot mîn lîp hie stêt;
in your command my body here stands;

swaz ir welt, daz wil ouch ich.'
whatever you will, that will also I.'

der rede vreutę der rîter sich
of-the speech rejoiced the knight himself

und genâḍęt ir an der stunde
and thanked her at the hour

als er beste kunde
as he best could

mit worten und mit herzen,
with words and with heart,

wand er des jâmers smerzen
for he of-the grief's pain

dannoch unverendet truoc,
still unended bore,

des er doch niemen zuo gewuoc.
of-which he yet to-no-one to mentioned.

herzeliebe ist ein schûr,
heart's-love is a shower,

dem lîbe ein herter nâchgebûr;
to-the body a hard neighbor;

ir süeze wirt vil ofte sûr.
its sweetness becomes very often sour.

Rîâl, der künic von Jeraphîn,
Rial, the king of Jeraphin,

gap die lieben vrouwen sîn
gave the dear lady his

im ze stæte nâch ir bet;
to-him for constancy after her prayer;

mit rehter ê wart an der stet
with right marriage became at the place

diu stæte gevestent undęr in dâ.
the constancy fastened between them there.

ein vingerlîn daz legte er sâ
a little-ring that laid he at-once

der juncvrouwen an ir hant;
to-the young-lady on her hand;

dâ wider gap si im daz lant
there against gave she to-him the land

und vrâgẹt die helde mære
and asked the heroes famous

ob daz ir wille wære.
whether that their will were.

dô wart ein vrœlîcher schal
then became a joyful noise

von dem liute über al
from the people over all

daz si sîn alle wæren vrô.
that they of-it all were glad.

vrouwe Lârîe satzte im dô
lady Larie set to-him then

ûf sîn houbet schône
upon his head beautifully

die guldînen krône
the golden crown

und bevalch in sîne hant
and commended into his hand

ir lîp, ir liute und ir lant
her body, her people and her land

mit einem zepter guldîn.
with a scepter golden.

dô kuste er die künigîn
then kissed he the queen

und nam si in sînen gwalt.
and took her into his power.

mit ir minne si im galt
with her love she to-him repaid

sîne nôt dô mê dan tûsentvalt.
his distress then more than thousandfold.

Dô disiu rede vẹrendet was,
When this speech ended was,

dô huop sich ûf dem palas
then rose itself in the palace

von vreuden harte grôzer schal.
from joys very great noise.

die tische wâren über al
the tables were over all

geriht nâch küniclîchem sit.
prepared after kingly custom.

den truhsæzen giengen mit
the stewards went with

busûner die in bliesen vor.
trumpeters who to-them blew before.

man warf die tambûr enbor
one threw the drums aloft

mit slegen daz der wîte sal
with blows that the wide hall

dem gedœne engegen hal.
to-the sound against echoed.

man gap dâ grôze wirtschaft
one gave there great feasting

und aller vreuden überkraft
and of-all joys excess

sâhen si die wîlẹ man az.
saw they the while one ate.

her Gwîgâlois der küṇic vergaz
lord Gwigalois the king forgot

alles sînes leides hie.
all his sorrow here.

dô er von dem tische gie,
when he from the table went,

die maget nam er bî der hant.
the maiden took he by the hand.

mit vreuden giengen si zehant
with joys went they at-once

von den liuṭen an ir gemach.
from the people to their chamber.

ob ie rîter baz geschach
if ever to-knight better happened

von wîbe, dạz liez er âne haz;
from woman, that let he without hatred;

geschach ouch ie vrouwen baz
(if)-happened also ever to-lady better

von manne, dạz lie si âne nît;
from man, that let she without envy;

daz erzeicten si einander sît
that showed they to-one-another afterward

mit herzenlîcher minne,
with heartfelt love,

wand ir zweier sinne
for their two's minds

mit ganzen triuwen wurḍen enein
with whole faith became at-one

sô daz diu herzẹ under in zwein
so that the hearts between them two

hêten beidiu einen muot;
had both one mind;

swaz si wolde, daz dûhte in guot;
whatever she would, that seemed to-him good;

ouch was sîn wille der vrouwen jâ.
also was his will to-the lady yes.

sus versigèlt diu minne dâ
thus sealed the love there

mit herzeliebe ir herze enein
with heart's-love their hearts in-one

sô daz diu liebẹ under in zwein
so that the love between them two

eines willen pflâgen.
of-one will took-care.

niemen darf des vrâgen
no-one needs of-that ask

ob si die naht iht wæren vrô.
whether they the night at-all were glad.

jâ si, deiswâr, ir vreudẹ was sô 9480
yes they, truly, their joy was so

daz ich der niht gelîchen mac.
that I to-it nothing liken can.

mit herzeliebe unz an den tac
with heart's-love until to the day

si sich underviengen.
they themselves embraced.

dar nâch si beidiu giengen
there after they both went

wol nâch mittem morgen 9485
well after mid morning

mit vreuden âne sorgen
with joys without sorrows

dâ man in eine messe sanc.
where one to-them a mass sang.

sich huop dâ harte grôz gedranc
itself rose there very great throng

dô si gekrœnet giengen vür.
when they crowned went forth.

die kamerære bî der tür 9490
the chamberlains by the door

wielken ez mit starken slegen.
rolled it with strong blows.

nu hêt her Gwîgâlois der degen
now had lord Gwigalois the thane

ze Glois in die burc gesant
to Glois into the castle sent

dâ man die juncvrouwen vant
where one the young-ladies found

und den getriuwen grâvẹn Adân.
and the faithful count Adan.

die vuortẹ man mit einander dan
them led one with one-another away

bî der naht ze Korntîn;
by the night to Korntin;

si wolden ouch zer messe sîn
they would also at-the mass be

dâ der helt gekrœnet gie.
where the hero crowned went.

ein bischof die bredige vie
a bishop the sermon began

mit sô süezen worten an
with so sweet words on

daz der getriuwe grâve Adân
that the faithful count Adan

sîne sünde begunde klagen.
his sins began to-lament.

er entslôz in die wîssagen
he unlocked to-them the prophets

und die ewangêlisten
and the evangelists

unz er mit gotes listen
until he with God's skills

und mit der rehten wârheit
and with the right truth

ir gelouben überstreit
their belief overcame

daz si der toufe wâren vrô.
that they of-the baptism were glad.

nâch ir bet toufte man dô
after their prayer baptized one then

vrouwen Marînẹn und grâvẹn Adân,
lady Marine and count Adan,

dar nâch die mägde wol getân
there after the maidens well made

die vrouwẹ Marîne brâhte dar.
whom lady Marine brought there.

dô si getoufet wâren gar
when they baptized were wholly

und kristen ê enpfiengen,
and Christian law received,

mit vreuden si dô giengen
with joys they then went

vür den künic ûf den sal
before the king up-to the hall

dâ die vürsten über al
where the princes over all

sâzen und die künigîn.
sat and the queen.

Rîâl, der künic von Jeraphîn,
Rial, the king of Jeraphin,

sîn lant aldâ von im enpfie;
his land there from him received;

dar nâch vil manic vürste gie,
there after very many-a prince went,

die sînes ortes wâren geil.
who of-his part were glad.

iedoch bleip im der bezzer teil:
yet remained to-him the better part:

dise vrouwen und diu lant
this lady and the lands

bejagt sîn ellenthaftiu hant
won his valiant hand

und sînes herzen manheit.
and his heart's manhood.

swer ie sô grôze nôt erleit
whoever ever so great distress suffered

durch vrouwen, dem erteile ich daz
for ladies, to-him adjudge I that

er si habẹ mit vlîze baz
he her have with diligence better

dan einer der da heime lît
than one who there at-home lies

unz man im eine vrouwen gît
until one to-him a lady gives

der eigen er wol möhte sîn.
of-whom own he well might be.

daz nim ich ûf die triuwe mîn
that take I upon the faith my

daz der sô wol niht wirt gepflegen
that of-her so well not becomes cared

noch sô süeze bî gelegen
nor so sweetly by lain

als der durch die man kumber hât
as of-her for whom one trouble has

und diu ze hôhem gwinne stât;
and who at high gain stands;

ich wæn dér minne nâhen gât.
I believe to-her love near goes.

Gwigalois enfeoffs the princes and has them keep Charles's law. Gawein comes with Erec, Lanzelet, and Iwein, summoned by a letter under the seal he once left Gwigalois's mother; he asks after her, laments their parting, and vows to serve all women, rejoicing in his son. He praises Larie, who calls him father, and twelve days of jousting follow. Then a naked page bursts in with a bloody spear: King Amire of Libya has been slain before Namur by Lion, who carried off his beloved, and Gwigalois must avenge it.

Dar umb enweiz ich anders niht
There about know I other nothing

wan als diu âventiure giht
except as the adventure says

diu mirz kunt hât getân:
which to-me-it known has made:

diu sagt uns daz der werde man
it tells us that the worthy man

vrouwen Lârîen pflæge alsô
lady Larie should-tend so

daz si der pflege wære vrô.
that she of-the care should-be glad.

er volzôch ir muote
he fulfilled her mind

mit lîbe und mit guote;
with body and with goods;

des was ir schœner lîp wol wert.
of-that was her beautiful body well worthy.

dô er die vürsten hêt gewert
when he the princes had granted

ir lêhen, als si an gezôch,
their fiefs, as they on drew,

ir deheines muot dâ von envlôch
of-them none's mind there from fled

sine swüeren im alle hulde dâ.
unless-they swore to-him all fealty there.

dô gebôt er den vürsten sâ
then commanded he the princes at-once

daz si behielten Karles reht
that they kept Charles's law

und diu gerihte machten sleht
and the courts made straight

über allez sîn rîche.
over all his realm.

daz wart dô stæticlîche
that became then steadfastly

gevestent, als er in gebôt.
fastened, as he to-them commanded.

sus hêt daz lant sîne nôt
thus had the land its distress

mit vreuden überwunden.
with joys overcome.

an den selben stunden
at the same hours

kom mîn her Gâwein geriten
came my lord Gawein ridden

vür die burc nâch sînen siten;
before the castle after his customs;

die wâren harte rîterlîch,
they were very knightly,

wand er was wert unde rîch,
for he was worthy and rich,

als ez an sînem geverte schein.
as it in his retinue showed.

sus kom mîn her Gâwein
thus came my lord Gawein

selbe vierde in daz lant: —
self fourth into the land:—

die vuorten werlîche hant —
they bore warlike hand—

Êrec und mîn her Gâwein,
Erec and my lord Gawein,

Lanzelet und her Îwein.
Lanzelet and lord Iwein.

ir geselleschaft und ir muot
their companionship and their mind

was âne valsch mit triuwen guot.
was without falsehood with faith good.

si kâmen dar mit rîcheit,
they came there with richness,

wol geriten und gekleit,
well mounted and clad,

als ez ir êren wol gezam;
as it to-their honors well befitted;

ir geverte daz was âne scham.
their retinue that was without shame.

si vuorten ingesindes vil.
they led of-household much.

busûnen unde seitspil
trumpets and string-music

vor in ûf der strâze hal.
before them on the street rang.

von vreuden was dâ grôzer schal
from joys was there great noise

ûf dem hûse und dâ vor.
in the house and there before.

die rîter giengen vür daz tor
the knights went before the gate

und enpfiengen wol die geste.
and received well the guests.

dâne was dehein gebreste
there was no lack

des guotes noch der êren;
of-the goods nor of-the honors;

daz begundẹ man allez kêren
that began one all to-turn

in ze liebe und ze guote
to-them for love and for good

mit herzen und mit muote.
with heart and with mind.

ir harnasch man vor in zôch.
their harness one before them led.

aht ors starc und hôch
eight steeds strong and high

zôch man den soumen nâch,
led one the pack-horses after,

diu man vil wol verdecket sach
which one very well covered saw

mit samîte der was rôt,
with samite that was red,

der ouch den schilten decke bôt
which also to-the shields cover offered

daz si dâ bî iht wærn bekant
that they there by at-all were known

swâ si riten durch diu lant.
wherever they rode through the lands.

sus kâmen si ze Korntîn.
thus came they to Korntin.

der künic und diu künigîn
the king and the queen

enpfiengen si mit triuwen wol,
received them with faith well,

als sun sînen vater sol.
as son his father shall.

her Gâwein in umbe vie;
lord Gawein him about caught;

vor vreuden er die zäher lie
for joys he the tears let

ûf sîne wât vallen.
upon his clothing fall.

mit triuwen âne gallen
with faith without gall

si sich underkusten;
they themselves kissed-each-other;

des mohte si wol lusten:
of-that might them well please:

si wârn ze sehen ẹinander vrô.
they were to see one-another glad.

vrouwe Lârîe kuste dô
lady Larie kissed then

die gestẹ, als si der künic bat.
the guests, as her the king bade.

die vürsten giengen von ir stat
the princes went from their place

und enpfiengen sị alle besunder.
and received them all separately.

daz was niht ein wunder
that was not a wonder

war umb si kômen in daz lant:
where about they came into the land:

her Gwîgâlois der hêt gesant
lord Gwigalois he had sent

einen brief dem herren Gâwein,
a letter to-the lord Gawein,

dạran ein ingesigel schein
there-on a seal shone

daz er sîner muoter lie
that he to-his mother left

dô er mit jâmer von ir gie
when he with grief from her went

und si sît nimmer mê gesach;
and her since never more saw;

dar an im doch ein leit geschach
there in to-him yet a sorrow happened

daz sînes herzen vreude brach.
that his heart's joy broke.

Der brief sagt im diu mære
The letter told him the tidings

wie er worden wære
how he become were

künic über zwei lant
king over two lands

und wie sîn ellenthaftiu hant
and how his valiant hand

die âventiure hêt erstriten.
the adventure had won-by-fighting.

derselbe brief begunde in biten
the-same letter began him to-beg

und manen herzenlîche
and urge heartily

daz er die väterlîche
that he the fatherly

triuwe an im behielte
faith toward him kept

und kæme dâ er wielte
and should-come where he ruled

zweir lande und ir krône;
of-two lands and their crown;

die wæren im ze lône
they were to-him for reward

gegeben umb sîn arbeit
given for his toil

und ein künigîn gemeit
and a queen merry

der schœnę man niht gelîches vant.
whose beauty one not like found.

sus kam her Gâwein in daz lant
thus came lord Gawein into the land

ze sînes sunes hôchvart,
to his son's high-feast,

dâ er vil wol enpfangen wart.
where he very well received became.

dar nâch er den wirt gevie
there after he the host caught

bî der hant unde gie
by the hand and went

an eine heimlîche stat,
to a private place,

dâ er in mit jâmer bat
where he him with grief bade

von sîner lieben muoter sagen.
of his dear mother tell.

dô huop sich êrste grôzez klagen
then rose itself first great lamenting

und herzenlîchiu swære
and heartfelt heaviness

dô ẹr diu gewissen mære
when he the certain tidings

vernam von der muoter sîn.
heard of the mother his.

er sprach ‘owê, künigîn,
he spoke ‘alas, queen,

dạz ich dîner minne enbern muoz!
that I thy love forgo must!

dîn handelungẹ unde dîn gruoz
thy entertainment and thy greeting

was mîner vreuden ôstertac!
was my joy's Easter-day!

swen ich an dînem arme lac
when I on thy arm lay

und dînen lîp umbe vie,
and thy body about caught,

owê, sô was mir rehte wie
alas, so was to-me rightly as-if

ich wær in dem pardîse!
I were in the paradise!

dîner minne spîse
of-thy love food

nam mir dicke mînen sin.
took from-me often my wits.

der jâmer gît mir ungewin.
the grief gives me loss.

wol der wünniclîchen zît
well of-the delightful time

der ich mit grôzem jâmer sît
of-which I with great grief since

vil herzenlîche hân gedâht,
very heartily have thought,

sô diu winterlange naht
when the winter-long night

mîner swære was ze lanc
of-my heaviness was too long

und mich diu grôze liebe twanc
and me the great love compelled

diu nâhen in mîn̤em herzen saz;
which near in my heart sat;

dâ von ich nimmer mê vergaz
there from I never more forgot

dîner reinen güete
thy pure goodness

irn gedæhte mîn gemüete.
unless-of-it thought my mind.

sus hân ich immer jâmers vil.
thus have I ever of-grief much.

durch mîner vrouwen êre ich wil
for my lady's honor I will

allen wîben wesen holt
to-all women be gracious

und si liutern als ein golt
and them refine as a gold

mit worten swâ ich immer kan.
with words wherever I ever can.

ich wil ir aller dienestman
I will of-them all vassal

und ir kempfe immer wesen,
and their champion ever be,

wan niemen mac ân si genesen
for no-one can without them be-saved

der ir güete erkennen kan;
who their goodness recognize can;

in solden wesen undertân
to-them should be subject

von rehte alle krône,
by right all crowns,

wan sich ir süezem lône
for itself to-their sweet reward

nimmer niht gelîchen mac.
never nothing liken may.

owê, gelebte ich noch den tac
alas, (if)-lived I still the day

daz ich mîn trût müese sehen,
that I my beloved must see,

sône möhtẹ mir lieber niht geschehen!
so might to-me dearer nothing happen!

daz wizze, lieber sun mîn,
that know, dear son my,

nu solt ab dû mîn vreude sîn,
now shalt but thou my joy be,

sît dich mir got hât gegeben;
since thee to-me God has given;

dîn werdicheit ist gar mîn leben.
thy worthiness is wholly my life.

des lobe ich unsern herren Krist
for-that praise I our lord Christ

daz dir sô wol gelungen ist
that to-thee so well succeeded is

und wil sîn immer wesen vrô.'
and will of-it ever be glad.'

nâch der rede giengen sị dô
after the speech went they then

wider zir geselleschaft.
back to-their company.

dâ was von vreuden grôziu kraft
there was from joys great force

und minniclîcher vrouwen vil,
and of-lovely ladies many,

der schœne ist gar der vreuden zil
whose beauty is wholly the joys' goal

und werltlîchiu wünne.
and worldly delight.

der in niht guotes günne,
who to-them not good grants,

der müez von in gescheiden sîn.
he must from them parted be.

si gebent vreude und hôhen pîn,
they give joy and high pain,

dem herzen senlîche nôt.
to-the heart longing distress.

wan ir gnâde, wir wæren tôt
except-for their grace, we were dead

an vreuden und an muote.
in joys and in spirit.

ze liebe und ze guote
for love and for good

geschuof si got der werlte gar.
created them God for-the world wholly.

ô wol der wünniclîchen schar
oh well of-the delightful troop

die got alsô gekrœnet hât
whom God so crowned has

daz gar der werlte vreude stât
that wholly the world's joy stands

an ir vil reinen güete!
on their very pure goodness!

si nidernt hôch gemüete
they lower high spirit

und hœhent dicke nidern muot.
and raise often low mind.

wol im der nâch ir willen tuot!
well to-him who after their will does!

ir trôst der ist nâch leide guot.
their comfort it is after sorrow good.

Dô dem herren Gâwein
When to-the lord Gawein

vrouwen Lârîen schœne erschein
lady Larie's beauty appeared

und ir lîp rehte ersach,
and her body rightly saw,

wider sî er güetlîche sprach
toward her he kindly spoke

'ô wol dir, minniclîcher lîp!
'oh well to-thee, lovely body!

gebar dîne schœne ie dehein wîp?
bore thy beauty ever any woman?

daz ist doch ungeloublich.
that is yet unbelievable.

ich wæn got selbe worhte dich
I believe God himself wrought thee

mit sîner gotlîchen hant.
with his godly hand.

swaz ich vrouwen hân erkant
whatever I of-ladies have known

od mit den ougen ie gesach,
or with the eyes ever saw,

der schœne macht dîn schœne swach.
their beauty makes thy beauty weak.

du bist ir aller spiegel.
thou art of-them all mirror.

ich hân noch her den ziegel
I have till hither the tile

vür lûter glas an gesehen;
for clear glass on looked;

dîner schœne muoz ich prîses jehen;
to-thy beauty must I prize grant;

du solt ir aller krône tragen.
thou shalt of-them all crown bear.

dîn schœne mangen hât erslagen
thy beauty many-a-one has slain

der noch wol lebte sîne zît.
who still well lived his time.

ich wæn dîn süeziu minne gît
I believe thy sweet love gives

dem herzen jâmers stimme.
to-the heart grief's voice.

du bist diu wâre gimme
thou art the true gem

senlîcher minne
of-longing love

des herzen und der sinne.
of-the heart and of-the senses.

ichn gan dîn niemen alsô wol
I grant thee to-no-one so well

als dem der dich dâ haben sol,
as to-him who thee there have shall,

mit dem du, vrouwe, solt genesen.
with whom thou, lady, shalt be-happy.

ir sult mîn vreude beidiu wesen
you shall my joy both be

swar ich in der werlte var.
wherever I in the world fare.

got hât sînen vlîz gar
God has his diligence wholly

ze wunsche wol an iuch geleit;
to the-ideal well on you laid;

und læt er iuch âne leit
and (if)-lets he you without sorrow

alsô mit vreuden alten,
so with joys grow-old,

und welt ir danne behalten
and (if)-will you then keep

die sêle̥, sô wirt daz ende guot.
the soul, so becomes the end good.

nu gebe er iu den selben muot
now give he to-you the same mind

der iuwer minne gesamnet hât;
which your love gathered has;

dar zuo habt ir mînen rât
there to have you my counsel

und mîne helfe̥ die wîle̥ ich lebe.
and my help the while I live.

ich zel mirz zeiner grôzen gebe
I count to-me-it for-a great gift

von unsers herren barmicheit
from our lord's mercy

daz er mir mîn herzeleit
that he from-me my heart's-sorrow

mit iu beiden hât benomen.
with you both has taken.

ze vreuden bin ich wider komen
to joys am I back come

sît ich iuch bî einander weiz.'
since I you by one-another know.'

vrouwe Lârîe sich dô vleiz
lady Larie herself then strove

mit gebærden und mit munde
with bearing and with mouth

als si beste kunde
as she best could

daz sị in mit triuwen meinde;
that she him with faith meant;

mit worten sị im bescheinde
with words she to-him showed

daz si sîn tohter wolde sîn;
that she his daughter would be;

hern Gâwein hiez si väterlîn.
lord Gawein called she little-father.

sus gwan diu triuwe und ir sin
thus won the faith and her wit

einen muot under in,
one mind among them,

der was gescheiden ê mit drin.
which was parted before in three.

Des küniges hôchzît diu was grôz.
The king's wedding-feast it was great.

ir deheinen ḍẹs wesens dâ verdrôz.
of-them none of-the being there wearied.

man gap in grôze wirtschaft;
one gave to-them great feasting;

dar zuo si vreuden überkraft
there to they of-joys excess

sâhen alle tage dâ.
saw all days there.

niemen dorfte vrâgen 'wâ?'
no-one needed to-ask 'where?'

wan dâ was manger hande spil
for there was of-many kinds play

und rîterlîcher vreuden vil;
and of-knightly joys much;

alsô vertriben si die zît.
so passed they the time.

der sal was schœne unde wît,
the hall was beautiful and wide,

lûter, eben als ein glas.
clear, even as a glass.

vil grôzer tanz dạrûffe was
very great dance thereupon was

von rîtern und von vrouwen.
of knights and of ladies.

ouch stuonden in den ouwen
also stood in the meadows

vil manic hêrlîch gezelt.
very many-a lordly tent.

beidiu wisen unde velt
both meadows and field

vollez rîterschefte lac,
full of-knighthood lay,

dâ man buhurdierens pflac
where one jousting practiced

alle tage unz an die naht.
all days until to the night.

sus was mit vreuden bedaht
thus was with joys covered

daz lant, daz ê jâmers pflac
the land, that before grief practiced

vil riuwiclîche mangen tac.
very ruefully many-a day.

Êrec und mîn her Gâwein,
Erec and my lord Gawein,

Lanzelet und her Îwein
Lanzelet and lord Iwein

die buhurdierten ouch dâ vil.
they jousted also there much.

sus wertę daz rîterlîche spil
thus lasted the knightly game

volleclîche zwelf tage
fully twelve days

nâch der âventiure sage.
after the adventure's telling.

alsô diu hôchzît ende nam,
when the wedding-feast end took,

dô kom ein garzûn âne scham
then came a page without shame

ûf den sal geloufen.
up-to the hall running.

der begunde sich roufen
he began himself to-tear-hair

und gebâren jæmerlîche,
and bear-himself lamentably,

wand er was jâmers rîche.
for he was of-grief rich.

ich wæn sîn swære diu was grôz.
I believe his heaviness it was great.

er lief nacket unde blôz
he ran naked and bare

aller hande kleider,
of-all kinds clothes,

niwan dirre beider:
except-for these both:

zweir schuohe und einer niderwât;
of-two shoes and one breeches;

im was aller hande rât
to-him was of-all kinds means

anders vil tiure.
otherwise very scarce.

der brâht âventiure:
he brought adventure:

ein bluotic sper zebrochen;
a bloody spear broken;

dâ mit was erstochen
there with was stabbed-dead

der künịc Âmîrẹ von Lîbîâ.
the king Amire of Libya.

daz kunt er den rîtern dâ
that made-known he to-the knights there

mit vil jæmerlîcher klage.
with very lamentable lament.

dâ vor an dem dritten tage
there before on the third day

was er erslagen vor Nâmûr.
was he slain before Namur.

daz hêt getân der vreuden schûr,
that had done the joys' storm,

Lîôn, der ungehiure,
Lion, the monstrous-one,

mit einer jostiure.
with a joust.

ditz klagte er offenlîche
this lamented he openly

und rief vil jæmerlîche
and called very lamentably

'wâfẹn über den helt balt
'to-arms over the hero bold

der grôzen mort und gewalt
who great murder and violence

an mînem herren hât getân!'
on my lord has done!'

er sprach 'swer ie liep gewan
he spoke 'whoever ever love won

und herzenlîche trûtschaft,
and heartfelt intimacy,

habe er dar zuo ganze kraft
(if)-have he there to whole strength

der triuwen und der manheit,
of-the faith and of-the manhood,

sô sî im daz unbilde leit
so be to-him the outrage grievous

daz der ungetriuwe man
that the faithless man

an mînem herren hât getân.
on my lord has done.

er nam im sîne vriundin
he took from-him his beloved

und vuorte sị mit gewalte hin,
and led her with violence thither,

dô er den helt hêt erslagen.
when he the hero had slain.

ditz leit sol der künic klagen,
this sorrow shall the king lament,

von Korntîn her Gwîgâlois;
of Korntin lord Gwigalois;

und ist er alsô kurtois
and (if)-is he so courtly

und pfligt sô grôzer manheit
and practices so great manhood

alsô diu werlt von im seit,
as the world of him says,

sô sol er rechen ditze leit.
so shall he avenge this sorrow.

The page tells that Amire lies unburied and that his wife Liamere is Larie's kinswoman; Larie faints, and Gwigalois vows to free her. The princes warn of Lion's allies, Gawein and the guests pledge their help, and a messenger rides to defy Lion. Amire lies on the field, guarded by his greyhounds until they starve beside him; Liamere goes mad with grief and dies, and Lion repents of the killing. The messenger defies Lion in the names of all the allies and tells him Liamere is dead.

Mîn vrouwe und mîn herre
My lady and my lord

die wâren harte verre
they were very far

durch den künic gevaren her.
for the king traveled hither.

nu hât geletzet in daz sper
now has deprived him the spear

des lebens und der hôchzît.
of-the life and of-the wedding-feast.

owê, wie jæmerlîch er lît
alas, how lamentably he lies

noch ûf dem velde unbegraben!
still on the field unburied!

swelhe nu rîters namen haben,
whoever now knight's name have,

den si daz unbilde leit.
to-them be the outrage grievous.

vor leide hân ich mîniu kleit
for sorrow have I my clothes

von dem lîbe gerizzen.
from the body torn.

der künic sol daz wizzen,
the king shall that know,

die vürsten und ir dienestman,
the princes and their vassals,

daz ditz laster ist getân
that this disgrace is done

benamen ûf ir êre.
assuredly upon their honor.

mîner vrouwen Lîamêre,
of-my lady Liamere,

der werden küniginne,
the worthy queen,

ist ir stætiu minne
is her constant love

mit gewalte entschumpfieret.
with violence routed.

swen daz laster zieret,
whom the disgrace adorns,

dern kan niht leit mit leide klagen.
he can not sorrow with sorrow lament.

Lîôn der vürste hât erslagen
Lion the prince has slain

an mînem herren einen man
in my lord a man

daz ich iu niht gesagen kan
that I to-you not tell can

wie hôhes werdes was sîn lîp.
how of-high of-worth was his body.

vrouwe Lârîe und sîn wîp,
lady Larie and his wife,

mîn vrouwe Lîamêre,
my lady Liamere,

ir ietwedriu sêre
of-them each sorely

der andern leit solde klagen
the other's sorrow should lament

mit triuwen, als ich iu wil sagen.
with faith, as I to-you will tell.

ir väter zweier bruoder kint
their fathers two brothers' children

wâren, die erslagen sint
were, who slain are

leider nû vor mangem tage.' —
alas now before many-a day.'—

der zweier namen ich iu sage:
of-the two names I to-you tell:

der ein Gârez von Lîbîâ;
the one Garez of Libya;

ouch nant er den andern sâ:
also named he the other at-once:

Lâr, der künic von Korntîn. —
Lar, the king of Korntin.—

'nu sehet waz sị einander sîn
'now see what they to-one-another are

und helfet mîner vrouwen wider!'
and help my lady back!'

vor leide vrouwẹ Lârîe nider
for sorrow lady Larie down

umb ir nifteln laster seic.
for her kinswoman's disgrace sank.

her Gwîgâlois niht lenger sweic.
lord Gwigalois not longer kept-silent.

er sprach 'vrouwe, gehabt iuch wol!
he spoke 'lady, fare yourself well!

ich erledige sị, oder ich dol
I free her, or I suffer

swaz ze lîden mir geschiht.
whatever to suffer to-me happens.

vrouwe Lârîẹ, enweinet niht!
lady Larie, weep not!

ich wil im widerbieten.’ 9890
I will to-him defiance-send.’

die vürsten im dô rieten
the princes to-him then counseled

daz er sich besande baz.
that he himself provided better.

si sprâchen ‘herre, wizzet, daz
they spoke ‘lord, know, that

im helfent die Särvîe;
to-him help the Serbs;

dar zuo von Turkîe 9895
there to from Turkey

kumt im vil manic rîter guot.
comes to-him very many-a knight good.

ouch tragent im vil holden muot
also bear to-him very gracious mind

die Valwen und die Kriechen.
the Wallachians and the Greeks.

wir müezen mangen siechen
we must many-a sick-one

vor der stat gewinnen. 9900
before the city win.

ûzẹn an der mûre und innen
outside on the wall and inside

lît dâ hôher türne vil.
lie there of-high towers many.

dâ wirt benamen ḍẹs tôdes spil.
there becomes assuredly the death's game.

nu dar, swer prîs bejagen wil!'
now thither, whoever prize win will!'

Êrec und sîn geselleschaft
Erec and his company

sprâchen 'swer nu zwîvelhaft
spoke 'whoever now doubting

durch dise vreise wil bestên,
for this peril will stand,

dem kan ḍạz laster niht nâhen gên
to-him can the disgrace not near go

daz sînem herrẹn und im geschiht.'
that to-his lord and to-him happens.'

'her Gwîgâlois, nu ẹnsûmt iuch niht,'
'lord Gwigalois, now delay yourself not,'

sprach her Gâwein der degen,
spoke lord Gawein the thane,

'und wil got des rehten pflegen,
'and (if)-will God of-the right take-care,

als er ie hât getân,
as he ever has done,

sô wæn uns niht geschaden kan.
so believe-I to-us nothing harm can.

ir habt vil guote rîterschaft,
you have very good knighthood,

und wellent die ir triuwen kraft
and (if)-will they their faith's strength

iu mit helfe erzeigen hie,
to-you with help show here,

sône gẹwan dehein künic nie
so won any king never

in disem landẹ sô mangen helt.
in this land so many-a hero.

dise rîter sint erwelt
these knights are chosen

ûz mangem künicrîche.'
out-of many-a kingdom.'

dô lobten im gelîche
then promised to-him alike

helfe an der stunde
help at the hour

mit gemeinem munde
with common mouth

die sîne und ouch die geste.
the his and also the guests.

diu sicherheit wart veste
the pledge became firm

über den ungetriuwen man
over the faithless man

der disen mort hêt getân
who this murder had done

und in daz laster hêt erboten.
and to-them the disgrace had offered.

her Gwîgâlois dô sînen boten
lord Gwigalois then his messenger

mit dem garzûn sande dar.
with the page sent there.

von im und von den vürsten gar
from him and from the princes all

widerbôt er in die stat
defied he into the city

Lîôn dem vürsten würde mat,
Lion the prince should-become mate,

möht er, nâch sînem schâche getân.
might he, after his chess done.

sus schiet der bot von im dan.
thus parted the messenger from him away.

dem garzûn wolder kleider geben.
to-the page would-he clothes give.

dô sprach er 'nein! ich wil leben
then spoke he 'no! I will live

mit herzeleide unz an die zît
with heart's-sorrow until to the time

daz gotes [gẹ]rihte râche gît
that God's [j]udgment vengeance gives

nâch sînen werken über in
after his works over him

der mir vreude und gewin
who from-me joy and gain

âne schulde genomen hât.
without guilt taken has.

owê der grôzen meintât,
alas the great misdeed,

daz si noch ungerochen stât!'
that it still unavenged stands!'

Sus nam er urloup und schiet dan
Thus took he leave and parted away

wider zuo dem tôten man,
back to the dead man,

der dannoch ûf dem velde lac;
who still on the field lay;

des got mit sîner huote pflac
of-whom God with his guard took-care

vor vogeln und vor hunden.
from birds and from dogs.

sîn ors daz was gebunden
his steed that was bound

vil vaste an einer linden ast.
very fast to a linden's branch.

alsô gewâfent lac der gast:
thus armed lay the guest:

sîn schilt was über in geleit
his shield was over him laid

nâch des landes gwonheit;
after the land's custom;

daz swert under sîn̤em houbet lac.
the sword under his head lay.

ditz was der sibènde tac
this was the seventh day

daz der helt was erslagen.
that the hero was slain.

man sach in jæmerlîche klagen
one saw him lamentably lament

zwêne windę die bî im lâgen.
two greyhounds who by him lay.

des heldes si dâ pflâgen
of-the hero they there took-care

vor vogeln und vor wilde.
from birds and from wild-beasts.

ungâz ûf dem gevilde
unfed on the field

dolten si die hungers nôt
suffered they the hunger's distress

unz si dâ lagen bî im tôt,
until they there lay by him dead,

daz ors und sîne winde.
the steed and his greyhounds.

den schat gap in diu linde
the shade gave to-them the linden

mit ir loube daz was breit.
with its leaves that was broad.

mîn vrouwe Lîamêre erleit
my lady Liamere suffered

nâch dem helde grôze pîne.
after the hero great pain.

im wâren die sîne
to-him were the his

gar gevangen und erslagen.
wholly captured and slain.

daz begunde sị herzenlîche klagen
that began she heartily to-lament

mît wîplîcher swære;
with womanly heaviness;

ir wart der lîp unmære
to-her became the body indifferent

daz si ir trût hêt verlorn.
that she her beloved had lost.

dô hêt ab si Lîôn erkorn
then had but her Lion chosen

ze vreuden sînem lîbe.
for joys to-his body.

disem reinem wîbe
to-this pure woman

ersluoc er ir lieben man
slew he her dear husband

mit einem sper von Angran.
with a spear from Angran.

ir grôziu schœnẹ gap im den tôt.
her great beauty gave him the death.

der jâmer ir nâch im gebôt
the grief to-her after him commanded

vil pînlîche swære.
very painful heaviness.

swie schœne ir varwe ê wære,
however beautiful her color before were,

diu ẹrlasch nu gar und wart bleich.
it went-out now wholly and became pale.

ir vreude ir sô gar gesweich
her joy from-her so wholly failed

daz si niwan jâmers pflac
that she nothing-but grief tended

beidiu naht unde tac.
both night and day.

des lîbes si sich gar bewac. 9990
of-the body she herself wholly gave-up.

Als ir der triuwen jâmer riet,
As to-her the faith's grief counseled,

ir schœne zöpfe sị abe schriet,
her beautiful braids she off cut,

die wâren lanc, ze rehte grôz;
which were long, by right great;

der regen von ir ougen vlôz
the rain from her eyes flowed

an diu wange und ûf ir brust. 9995
on the cheeks and upon her breast.

der bitter tôt was ir gelust;
the bitter death was her desire;

daz erzeiget si der werlte sît.
that showed she to-the world since.

si zarte von ir den samît,
she tore from her the samite,

der von golde gap liehten schîn,
which of gold gave bright shine,

und einen belz härmîn 10000
and a fur of-ermine

von ir schœnem lîbe.
from her beautiful body.

dem vil reinem wîbe
to-the very pure woman

wart von herzen leide,
became from heart sorrowful,

daz si ir ougen weide
that she her eyes' pasture

âne schulde slahen sach.
without guilt slain saw.

von disem leide ir herze brach,
from this sorrow her heart broke,

dâ von ouch si den lîp verlôs.
there from also she the life lost.

ir ganze sinne si verkôs
her whole senses she lost

mit jæmerlîcher tobeheit;
with lamentable madness;

sine dolte an ir deheiniu kleit,
she suffered on her no clothes,

unz man ir huote muose haben.
until one of-her guard must have.

'owê, wan wær ich begraben
'alas, if-only were I buried

mit mînem süezen trûte!'
with my sweet beloved!'

daz rief si vil lûte;
that cried she very loud;

dise rede begap si nie.
this speech gave-up she never.

swaz si ir schœnen lîbes gevie,
whatever she of-her beautiful body seized,

dâ[z] beiz si jæmerlîche abe.
that bit she lamentably off.

von dirre grôzen ungehabe
from this great grief

vlôch si wîp unde man,
fled her woman and man,

wan si was sô wol getân,
for she was so well made,

swer ir jâmer rehte ersach
whoever her grief rightly saw

daz dem ze weinen geschach.
that to-him to weep happened.

ditz treip si alsô siben tage,
this did she so seven days,

daz ir jâmer und ir klage
that her grief and her lament

was zallen zîten niuwe;
was at-all times new;

si truoc die wâren riuwe
she bore the true rue

umbę ir gesellen tôt.
for her companion's death.

Lîôn der vürste ir dicke enbôt
Lion the prince to-her often offered

sînen lîp und ouch sîn lant.
his body and also his land.

daz gienc ir allez zeiner hant;
that went to-her all to-one hand;

sîn trôst der was ir ungehabe.
his comfort it was her grief.

sus tet si sich der werlte abe
thus did she herself from-the world off

mit herzenlîchem sêre.
with heartfelt pain.

den lîp, guot und êre
the life, goods and honor

verlôs sị umb ir gesellen tôt;
lost she for her companion's death;

des wart vil manic ouge rôt;
of-that became very many-a eye red;

ir triuwe wac vür Karles lôt.
her faith weighed beyond Charles's weight.

Dô si der vürste tôte sach,
When her the prince dead saw,

wider sich selben er dô sprach
toward himself self he then spoke

‘owê, waz hân ich getân!
‘alas, what have I done!

ich hân erslaǫn ir lieben man
I have slain her dear husband

âne schuldę mit mîner hant.
without guilt with my hand.

owê dir, untriuwen bant,
alas to-thee, faithlessness’s bond,

wie mich dîn gir verleitet hât!
how me thy greed misled has!

du gæbę mir disen bœsen rât
thou gavest to-me this wicked counsel

daz ich den helt erslagen hân
that I the hero slain have

niwan ûf des heiles wân
only upon the luck’s hope

daz mir sîn schœne wîp belibe
that to-me his beautiful wife should-remain

und ich die zît mit ir vertribe.
and I the time with her should-pass.

nu lît si hie vor leide tôt
now lies she here for sorrow dead

umb ir gesellen; deist ein nôt
for her companion; that-is a distress

die ich immer klagen muoz.
which I ever lament must.

ô wol dir, reines wîbes gruoz
oh well to-thee, pure woman’s greeting

und herzenlîchiu trûtschaft!
and heartfelt intimacy!

du treist et gar der triuwen kraft
thou bearest just wholly the faith's strength

mit vil jæmerlîchen siten.'
with very lamentable customs.'

innen des dô kam geriten
inside of-that then came ridden

des küniges bot von Korntîn.
the king's messenger from Korntin.

waz sîn gewerp möhte sîn,
what his errand might be,

daz was in allen unbekant.
that was to-them all unknown.

er erbeizte und gie zehant
he dismounted and went at-once

dâ er Lîôn den vürsten sach.
where he Lion the prince saw.

wider in er vrävelîche sprach
toward him he boldly spoke

'herre, dir widerbietent die
'lord, to-thee defy those

die ich dir benenne hie
whom I to-thee name here

ir dienest und ir vriuntschaft:
their service and their friendship:

mîn herre der künic mit sîner kraft,
my lord the king with his force,

her Gwîgâlois von Korntîn,
lord Gwigalois of Korntin,

Rîâl, der künic von Jeraphîn,
Rial, the king of Jeraphin,

Êrec, fil de roi Lac
Erec, son of king Lac

und Lanzelet der Arlac,
and Lanzelet the Of-the-lake,

mîns herren vater, her Gâwein,
my lord's father, lord Gawein,

und von dem brunnen her Îwein,
and of the fountain lord Iwein,

Zaradech und Panschafar, —
Zaradech and Panschafar,—

die sint von der heiden schar
they are of the heathen troop

zwêne künịge ûz Asîâ, —
two kings out-of Asia,—

die wellent ir sper dâ
they will their spears there

durch dînen schilt verstechen
through thy shield shatter

und daz laster rechen
and the disgrace avenge

mit swerten an dîn̤em lîbe,
with swords on thy body,

daz du dem reinen wîbe
that thou to-the pure woman

hâst erslagẹn ir lieben man,
hast slain her dear husband,

der dir niht leides hêt getân.
who to-thee nothing harmful had done.

zes künịges hôchzît wolder sîn;
to-the king's wedding-feast would-he be;

nu hât diu untriuwe dîn
now has the faithlessness thy

ir gewalt an im erzeiget.
its violence on him shown.

dîn hôchvart wirt geneiget
thy pride becomes bowed

und dîn gewalt verkêret.
and thy power overturned.

dîn vreude wirt gesêret
thy joy becomes wounded

mit herzenlîcher swære.
with heartfelt heaviness.

owê der leiden mære
alas the sorrowful tidings

daz mîn vrouwe Lîamêre ist tôt,
that my lady Liamere is dead,

diu nie wart von schanden rôt!
who never became from shames red!

ir lîp hât si von dir verlorn.
her life has she from thee lost.

dar umbẹ hât ûf dich gesworn
there about has upon thee sworn

der grâvẹ Adân von Âlarîe,
the count Adan of Alarie,

und dise vürsten drîe:
and these princes three:

Darêl, Gamêr und Arîûn;
Darel, Gamer and Ariun;

Medarîe und Belacûn,
Medarie and Belacun,

von danne sint si geborn.
from thence are they born.

ir herrẹn habent si verlorn
their lord have they lost

ûf dem gevilde bî Roimunt.
on the field by Roimunt.

von disen vürstèn tuon ich dir kunt
of these princes make I to-thee known

daz si dir schade wellent sîn.
that they to-thee harm will be.

vrouwę Êlamîę diu künigîn
lady Elamie the queen

widerbiutęt dir ir vriuntschaft,
defies to-thee her friendship,

si und ir geselleschaft.
she and her company.

vrouwe Marîne und ir gespiln
lady Marine and her playmates

die wellent hie mit dir spiln
they will here with thee play

dâ von manic ouge wirdet rôt.
there from many-a eye becomes red.

daz spil wirt manges mannes tôt.
the game becomes many-a man's death.

dir widerbiutęt ouch Bejolarz,
to-thee defies also Bejolarz,

des grâven sun von Lêodarz
the count's son of Leodarz

und sîn nevè, der grâvę Môrâl;
and his nephew, the count Moral;

Ursîn und Ambigâl,
Ursin and Ambigal,

zwêne grâven von Sâlîe;
two counts of Salie;

dar nâch diu mässenîe
there after the household

widerbiutęt dir ir vriuntschaft.
defies to-thee their friendship.

mîn herrę der künìc, mit siner kraft
my lord the king, with his force

wil dich besitzen vor der stat.
will thee besiege before the city.

dâ wirt dîn untriuwe sat
there becomes thy faithlessness sated

mortlîcher dinge.
of-murderous things.

dîner vreuden klinge
of-thy joys blade

muoz bresten von der meintât
must break from the misdeed

die dîn hant begangen hât
which thy hand committed has

an dem vürsten wol geborn.
on the prince well born.

von sînem tôde hât verlorn
from his death has lost

ir lîp vrouwe Lîamêre,
her life lady Liamere,

diu mit herzen sêre
who with heart's pain

vil jæmerlîche ende kôs
very lamentable end chose

vor leide, daz sị ir trût verlôs.
for sorrow, that she her beloved lost.

waz mac ich nu sprechen mê?
what may I now say more?

ir lîp der ist ein junger rê
her body it is a young corpse

und lît hie jæmerlîche.
and lies here lamentably.

nu wizze et sicherlîche
now know just surely

daz got den mort niht übersiht.
that God the murder not overlooks.

swaz leides dir dâ von geschiht,
whatever of-sorrow to-thee there from happens,

dazn sol niemen guoter klagen.
that shall no-one good lament.

nâch disen zwelf tagen
after these twelve days

sihestu mînen herren hie,
seest-thou my lord here,

dem reiner wîbe jâmer ie
to-whom pure women's grief ever

vîl nâhen an daz herze gie.'
very near to the heart went.'

XXXV · LION'S ANSWER

Lion answers defiantly, sneering that Gwigalois slew Roaz by magic. The messenger reports to Korntin, and the court laments Liamere, while the poet speaks of Love's power, of the world's decline, and of John's vision of the eagle crying woe. Larie is to ride to war in a castle on an elephant, hung with silk and a crystal of balsam sealed in a ruby, guarded by four counts, and the princes swear to obey Gawein as their commander.

Dô Lîôn hêt vernomen
When Lion had heard

die botschaft diu im was komen,
the message which to-him was come,

und disen jâmer vor im sach,
and this grief before him saw,

daz beswârte in sêre unde sprach
that grieved him sorely and spoke

'der rede wirt vil guot rât.
'for-the speech becomes very good counsel.

swer mir widerboten hât
whoever to-me defiance-sent has

dem entwîche ich nimmer einen vuoz.
from-him yield I never one foot.

ir vriuntschaft und ir gruoz
their friendship and their greeting

ist mir als in diu mîne.
is to-me as to-them the mine.

vor der stat ich schîne
before the city I appear

swen si komen, mit rîters wer.
whenever they come, with knight's defense.

sine bringent nie so grôzez her
they bring never so great host

ichn gebe in rîterschaft genuoc.
unless-I give to-them knighthood enough.

ôwoch! daz ich den vürsten sluoc,
alas! that I the prince slew,

des trûwe ich harte wol genesen.
of-that trust I very well to-survive.

die mir schade wellent wesen
those-who to-me harm will be

die komen her, swer si sîn!
let-them come hither, whoever they be!

ich nim daz ûf die triuwe mîn
I take that upon the faith my

daz si den prîs hie bejagent
that they the prize here win

den ir wîp da heime klagent.
whom their wives there at-home lament.

si wænent des ich sî ẹz Rôaz.
they believe of-that I be it Roaz.

deiswâr, ich trûwe verre baz
truly, I trust far better

mîn lant erweren und die stat.
my land to-defend and the city.

der rede wil ich dehein blat
of-the speech will I no leaf

legen vür mînen munt.
lay before my mouth.

daz weiz ich wol und ist mir kunt
that know I well and is to-me known

daz er den helt mit zouber sluoc
that he the hero with magic slew

des hant vil mänlich ellen truoc.
whose hand very manly valor bore.

durch daz im dâ sô wol gelanc,
for that to-him there so well succeeded,

sô wolder über mînen danc
so would-he against my thanks

mîn lant mir an erstrîten.
my land from-me on win-by-fighting.

er sol noch lenger bîten
he shall still longer wait

mich dunket des, er sûme sich.
me seems of-that, he delays himself.

sîn zorn unde sîn gerich
his anger and his vengeance

ist mir als daz bœste hâr
is to-me as the worst hair

daz ie man von im geschar.
that ever one from him shore.

daz soltu dînem herren sagen.
that shalt-thou to-thy lord say.

swaz er prîsẹ̣s hie wil bejagen,
whatever he of-prize here will win,

den muoz er koufen tiure;
that must he buy dearly;

hie ẹnist niht âventiure!
here is no adventure!

die sol er suochen anderswâ.
that shall he seek elsewhere.

ich weiz wol, — im gelinge et dâ
I know well,— to-him succeed just there

als im tet ze Korntîn, — 10185
as to-him did at Korntin,—

sol ich leben, ich tuon im schîn
shall I live, I make to-him visible

daz er mîn lant und mich verbirt.
that he my land and me forgoes.

ich wil hie selbe wesen wirt.
I will here self be host.

ern hât niht rehte an mir ersehen;
he has not rightly on me looked;

ander liute sol er ịm spehen 10190
other people shall he for-himself espy

die sîn ze herren wellen jehen!'
who him for lord will acknowledge!'

Der bot sprach zem wirte sân
The messenger spoke to-the host at-once

'hie ẹnwirt mit rede niht getân;
'here becomes with speech nothing done;

die sul wir beide lâzen sîn;
that shall we both let be;

bistu vrum, daz wirt wol schîn. 10195
art-thou valiant, that becomes well visible.

ich wil mit urloube varn.'
I will with leave fare.'

er sprach 'got müeze dich bewarn!
he spoke 'God may thee guard!

nu sagẹ der mässenîẹ von mir:
now tell the household from me:

und tragen sị rîterlîche gir,
and (if)-bear they knightly desire,

daz si die hie erzeigen;
that they it here show;

ez sterben [ni]wan die veigen, —
there die [on]ly the fated,—

die lægen doch dâ heime tôt, —
they would-lie yet there at-home dead,—

daz si niht schiuhen dise nôt.'
that they not shun this distress.'

er sprach 'herre, daz tuon ich.'
he spoke 'lord, that do I.'

mit der rede schiedens sich.
with the speech parted-they themselves.

sus vuor der bot ze Korntîn.
thus fared the messenger to Korntin.

den künic und die künigîn
the king and the queen

vant er und die vürsten dâ.
found he and the princes there.

disiu mære begunder sâ
these tidings began-he at-once

al der mässenîe sagen:
to-all the household to-tell:

wie der künic wære erslagen,
how the king were slain,

Âmîre, durch sîn schœne wîp,
Amire, for his beautiful wife,

und wie dar nâch vor leide ir lîp
and how there after for sorrow her life

diu schœne Lîamêre
the beautiful Liamere

mit herzenlîchem sêre
with heartfelt pain

vil jæmerlîch verkôs,
very lamentably lost,

dô si ir gesellen vẹ̣rlôs
when she her companion lost

der ir herzen bluome was.
who her heart's flower was.

noch stæter danne ein adamas
still more-constant than a diamond

was der reinen triuwe.
was the pure-one's faith.

daz erzeicte ir grôziu riuwe
that showed her great rue

die si nâch dem helde truoc
which she after the hero bore

den ir grôziu schœne sluoc.
whom her great beauty slew.

owê und wol dir, Minne!
alas and well to-thee, Love!

du twingest die küniginne
thou compellest the queen

gelîch der vil armen diet.
like the very poor folk.

dîn kraft nie niht underschiet
thy strength never nothing distinguished

dune zügest ẹz gar in dîn gebot.
unless-thou drewest it wholly into thy command.

du kanst in ernest und in spot
thou canst in earnest and in jest

twingen allez daz du wil.
compel all that thou wilt.

dîn ende daz treit jâmers vil:
thy end it bears of-grief much:

den tôt er nâch im ziuhet.
the death it after it draws.

swer dînem gẹwalte enpfliuhet,
whoever thy power escapes,

der dunket mich ein sinnic man.
he seems to-me a wise man.

dîn kraft vil wol gemachen kan
thy strength very well make can

mit leide liehtiu ougen rôt.
with sorrow bright eyes red.

dâ wart vil ofte 'owê dir, tôt!'
there became very often 'alas to-thee, death!'

gerüefet jæmerlîche,
called lamentably,

dô si klägelîche
when they plaintively

klagten daz vil reine wîp,
lamented the very pure woman,

diu von herzeleide ir lîp
who from heart's-sorrow her life

verlôs umb ir lieben man.
lost for her dear husband.

als ich mich versinnen kan,
as I myself bethink can,

daz wirt vil selten nû getân.
that becomes very seldom now done.

Welt ir, ich sagiu wâ von:
(If)-will you, I tell-you where from:

wîlen was man ungewon
once was one unaccustomed

valschlîcher minne;
of-false love;

mit einvaltigem sinne
with single mind

minten si ein ander dô.
loved they one other then.

nû sî wir valschlîche vrô
now are we falsely glad

und minnen [ni]wan mit kündicheit.
and love [on]ly with cunning.

swer nû wâre minne treit
whoever now true love bears

und triuwe, der ist vil manges spot.
and faith, he is very many-a-one's mockery.

wîlen dô minten si got,
once then loved they God,

dô hêt ouch ers in sîner pflege.
then had also he-them in his care.

nu kêrẹ wir alle von dem wege
now turn we all from the way

sîner gebot, diu er uns lie.
of-his commands, which he to-us left.

dâ von solt wir bedenken wie
there from should we consider how

diu werlt sich verkêret hât;
the world itself turned-about has;

ir vreude jæmerlîche stât;
its joy lamentably stands;

diu reht sint gevlœhet;
the rights are put-to-flight;

ir gewalt der ist gehœhet;
its violence it is heightened;

diu triuwe ist verschertet;
the faith is notched;

untriuwẹ mit nîde hertet.
faithlessness with envy hardens.

diu zît hât sich verwandelt gar;
the time has itself changed wholly;

ie lanc lenger bœsènt diu jâr.
ever long longer worsen the years.

ezn lebt nu niemen sîne zît;
it lives now no-one his time;

diu gîticheit bœsẹ ende gît;
the greed wicked end gives;

sus hât si sich verkêret.
thus has it itself turned-about.

ir vreude ist gesêret
its joy is wounded

mit tœtlîcher sünde.
with deadly sin.

ditz ist ir urkünde:
this is its witness:

si stêt nû, als wîlen sach
it stands now, as once saw

Jôhannes, dâ von er sprach
John, there of he spoke

in dem hêren geiste.
in the holy spirit.

mit gotes volleiste
with God's help

sach er die himel offen stên;
saw he the heavens open stand;

dar inne solhiu dinc begên
there in such things take-place

daz im ze schrîben wart verboten.
that to-him to write became forbidden.

er sach des wâren lambes boten
he saw the true lamb's messengers

in sînen tougen umbe varn
in his mysteries about fare

und durch den himel einen arn
and through the heaven an eagle

vliegen krefticlîche.
fly mightily.

der rief vil jæmerlîche
it cried very lamentably

'owê ir, aller muoter barn!
'alas you, of-all mothers' children!

ir solt nâch sînem willen varn
you shall after his will fare

der anegenges niene hât
who beginning never has

und des gewalt ân ende stât
and whose power without end stands

und der in sîner hende
and who in his hand

besliuzet der werlt ende,
encloses the world's end,

ân des genâdẹ niht mac gesîn;
without whose grace nothing may be;

des tuot er alle tage schîn.
of-that makes he all days visible.

sîn gebot habt ir übersehen;
his command have you overlooked;

des muoz iu leide geschehen.
for-that must to-you sorrow happen.

von im sît ir vervluochet
by him are you cursed

iuwẹrs lebens er niht ruochet.'
of-your life he not cares.'

daz ịst über uns ergangen.
that is over us gone.

mit des tôdes zangen
with the death's tongs

sî wir leider hin gezogen.
are we alas thither drawn.

diu gîticheit hât uns betrogen
the greed has us deceived

und werltlîcher rîchtuom.
and worldly riches.

owê dir, rîcheit unde ruom!
alas to-thee, richness and fame!

dîn zierlîch gebende
thy elegant headdress

wirt vil ellende
becomes very wretched

nach des lîbes ende.
after the body's end.

Ichn mac ez alle̥z errecken niht
I can it all recount not

swaz dô geschach und noch geschiht:
whatever then happened and still happens:

der mære würde gar ze vil;
of-the tale would-become wholly too much;

dâ von ich mich niht sûmen wil
there from I myself not delay will

mit sô manger umbesage.
with so many-a circumlocution.

dâ was grôz weinen unde klage
there was great weeping and lament

von der mässenîe.
from the household.

diu künigîn Lârîe
the queen Larie

klaget vil sêre ir nifteln tôt.
laments very sorely her kinswoman's death.

dâ wart vil manic ouge rôt
there became very many-a eye red

von klägelîchem sêre.
from plaintive pain.

der bot sagt in noch mêre
the messenger told to-them still more

von Lîôn, dem vürsten balt:
of Lion, the prince bold:

daz er umb ir aller gwalt
that he for of-them all power

niht engæbe ḍạz bœste hâr
not would-give the worst hair

daz ie man von im geschar,
that ever one from him shore,

und daz ir aller widerbot
and that of-them all defiance

wær sîn tägelîcher spot;
were his daily mockery;

ern vörhte si ze nihte
he feared them for nothing

und woldẹ zir angesihte
and would to-their sight

gegẹn in ligen mit sîn̤ẹm her.
against them lie with his host.

si vünden rîterlîche wer,
they would-find knightly defense,

strenge jost und herten strît,
stern joust and hard strife,

ob si kœmen im enzît
if they came to-him in-time

mit mänlîchem muote.
with manly spirit.

her Gâwein der guote
lord Gawein the good

und sîn gesellen [die] wurden vrô.
and his companions [they] became glad.

diu mässenîẹ bereit sich dô
the household readied itself then

vil snelle zuo der hervart,
very swiftly to the campaign,

dâ manic schilt verhouwen wart.
where many-a shield hewn-apart became.

ouch bereite man der künigîn
also readied one for-the queen

dâ si inne solde sîn
there she in should be

die vart durch des küniges bet,
the journey for the king's prayer,

daz ouch si vil gerne tet,
which also she very gladly did,

wand ez ir beider minne riet,
for it of-them both love counseled,

diu si nimmer mê geschiet.
which them never more parted.

swar mîn her Gwîgâlois nu rit,
wherever my lord Gwigalois now rides,

vrouwe Lârîe im volget mit,
lady Larie him follows with,

wand er die schœnen gerne sach.
for he the beautiful-one gladly saw.

er hiez bereiten durch ir gemach
he bade prepare for her comfort

ein harte schœne kastel,
a very beautiful castle,

ze mâze hôch und sinwel,
in measure high and round,

geriht ûf einen helfant,
set upon an elephant,

daz man vil wol bedecket vant
which one very well covered found

mit pfellẹ von Alẹxandrîe.
with brocade of Alexandria.

drinne mîn vrouwẹ Lârîe
therein my lady Larie

mit zwelf juncvrouwen reit,
with twelve young-ladies rode,

die wâren rîch und gemeit.
who were rich and merry.

vil grôz gezierde truoc man drîn;
very great adornment carried one therein;

mit rîchen tepten sîdîn
with rich carpets of-silk

bestreuwet man daz kastel.
strewed one the castle.

ein pfelle rôt unde gel
a brocade red and yellow

die wende al umbe gar bevienc.
the walls all about wholly enclosed.

enmitten dar inne hienc
in-the-middle there in hung

ein mückennetze sîdîn.
a mosquito-net of-silk.

mit golde was gehangen drîn
with gold was hung therein

ein kristalle, lûterr danne ein glas,
a crystal, clearer than a glass,

daz vil wol gefüllet was
that very well filled was

mit balsam der gap guoten smac;
with balsam that gave good scent;

des süeze enstrîte gegen wac
whose sweetness in-strife against weighed

bisem und spicâ nardî.
musk and spica nardi.

welt ir wizzen waz daz sî?
will you know what that be?

umḅ den smac stêt ez sô:
about the scent stands it so:

nie niemen wart sô unvrô,
never no-one became so unglad,

gesmeckẹt er sîn, sîn leit zergê.
(if)-smells he of-it, his sorrow vanish.

nu hœrt von sîner tugent mê:
now hear of its virtue more:

dehein suht ist sô getân
no sickness is so made

und wirt diu salbe gestrichen dran,
and (if)-becomes the salve rubbed thereon,

sine müeze deste semfter sîn.
unless-it must the gentler be.

besigelt in einẹm rubîn
sealed in a ruby

was si; dâ von mans gesach.
was it; there from one-it saw.

der was der kristallen dach
that was the crystal's roof

und brehendẹ als ein kerzen lieht
and gleaming as a candle's light

dâ man des nahtes bi gesieht.
which one at night by sees.

diu salbe ist tiure und unbekant;
the salve is precious and unknown;

man bringet sị von des Alten lant
one brings it from the Old-man's land

vil verre ûz der heidenschaft.
very far out-of the heathendom.

von solhen wurzen hât si kraft
from such herbs has it strength

die man mit golde wider wiget.
which one with gold against weighs.

dâ von ir sûezer smac gesiget
there from its sweet scent conquers

von rehte allen wurzen an.
by right all herbs on.

als ichz vernomen hân,
as I-it heard have,

ir süezẹ sich niht gelîchen kan.
its sweetness itself not liken can.

Daz netze was gestricket wol;
The net was knotted well;

guldîner schellen hienc ez vol
of-golden bells hung it full

niden an dem ende;
below on the end;

ouch wâren die wende
also were the walls

mit betten umbe und umbẹ beleit.
with beds about and about laid.

von rîchen pfellen kulter breit
of rich brocades quilts broad

wâren drûf gestrecket,
were thereon stretched,

die wende gar bestecket
the walls wholly stuck

mit bluomen, und daz hûs bestreut.
with flowers, and the house strewn.

der tac, des schîn diu herze vreut,
the day, whose shine the hearts gladdens,

schein al umbe durch diu glas,
shone all about through the glasses,

swen ez an sînem zîte was.
when it in its time was.

sus was gezieret schône
thus was adorned beautifully

drinne der vreuden krône,
therein the joys' crown,

des wunsches âmîe,
of-the ideal beloved,

diu künigîn Lârîe
the queen Larie

durch gemach solde rîten.
for comfort should ride.

in vil kurzen zîten
in very short times

nâch ir willẹn was ez bereit,
after her will was it ready,

gezierẹt mît grôzer rîcheit.
adorned with great richness.

swenne diu vrouwe solde varn,
whenever the lady should fare,

sô hiez her Gwîgâlois bewarn
so bade lord Gwigalois guard

mit grôzer huote daz kastel
with great watch the castle

vier grâven; die wâren snel
four counts; they were swift

ze triuwen und ze manheit;
to faith and to manhood;

ouch was in ganzer sin bereit.
also was to-them whole mind ready.

der eine hiez grâvẹ Môrâl;
the one was-called count Moral;

Ursîn und Ambigâl;
Ursin and Ambigal;

der vierde hiez grâvẹ Adân.
the fourth was-called count Adan.

der gebot wârn undertân
to-their command were subject

hundert rîter gêrte.
hundred knights armed-with-spears.

swar der helfant kêrte
wherever the elephant turned

ûf dem velde od an dem wege,
on the field or on the way,

dâ hêten si in in ir pflege,
there had they it in their care,

alsô diu vrouwe drûffe was.
when the lady thereon was.

nu kômen ûf den palas
now came up-to the palace

die vürsten durch des küniges bet
the princes for the king's prayer

und swuoren alle an der stet
and swore all at the place

ze warten dem herren Gâwein,
to obey the lord Gawein,

des kunst an rîterschefte schein.
whose skill in knighthood shone.

er dûhte si sô wîse
he seemed to-them so wise

daz si von sînem prîse
that they from his praise

nimmer möhten missevarn,
never might go-astray,

sît er daz her solde bewarn
since he the host should guard

mit sinnen und mit manheit.
with wits and with manhood.

des kom er in die arbeit
of-that came he into the toil

10435 die er vil kûme überwant.
which he very hardly overcame.

wan daz im vreise was bekant,
except that to-him peril was known,

ez wær verzaget des heldes hant.
it were despaired the hero's hand.

XXXVI · THE MARCH TO NAMUR

Six thousand knights serve Gwigalois without pay, and the poet praises good women. Rial leads with his elephant banner and six war-elephants; Larie follows on her elephant with twelve maidens, and her dress is described down to a brooch of three stones, as Wirnt names himself. The ladies play at board games, Erec and Iwein guard Larie, and archers keep the rear; Gwigalois's black banner carries a golden wheel, the heathen kings an ermine eagle, and merchants follow with camels.

Dô diu hervart was bereit,
When the campaign was ready,

als uns diu âventiure seit,
as to-us the adventure says,

10440 und iegelîch rîter zuo der vart
and each knight to the journey

an der zal geahtet wart,
in the count reckoned became,

dô hêt der künic von Korntîn, —
then had the king of Korntin,—

an dem was grôz manheit schîn, —
on whom was great manhood visible,—

sehs tûsent rîter ode mêr.
six thousand knights or more.

nie dẹhein künic wart sô hêr
never any king became so lordly

im zæme solhiu rîterschaft.
unless-to-him would-befit such knighthood.

er hêt wol heres grœzer kraft
he had well of-host greater force

gevüeret, ob er wolde.
led, if he would.

dehein rîter nâch solde
no knight for pay

diente dâ mit sîner wer:
served there with his defense:

im was sô willic gar daz her
to-him was so willing wholly the host

durch sîne grôze manheit,
for his great manhood,

daz im ir dienest was bereit
that to-him their service was ready

mit ganzem willen, âne guot;
with whole will, without goods;

si truogẹn im alle holden muot.
they bore to-him all gracious mind.

ouch tâten si der künigîn
also made they to-the queen

sît wol an dem strîte schîn
since well in the strife visible

daz si rou ir nifteln tôt.
that them rued her kinswoman's death.

man sol reiner wîbe nôt
one shall pure women's distress

dankes nimmer übersehen.
willingly never overlook.

swâ in schade mac geschehen
wherever to-them harm may happen

daz sol wendẹn ein ieglîch man,
that shall avert an each man,

wan dem herzen niemen kan
for to-the heart no-one can

sô herzenlîche vreude geben
so heartfelt joy give

als der reinen wîbe leben.
as the pure women's life.

ir gewizzen und ir güete
their wisdom and their goodness

hœhent daz gemüete
raise the spirit

daz immer wære an vreuden tôt.
that ever were in joys dead.

sus wendent si des herzen nôt
thus avert they the heart's distress

mit guoter handelunge.
with good treatment.

vervluochet sî diu zunge
cursed be the tongue

dâ von dehein rede gê,
there from any speech go,

diu ir lobe widerstê!
which their praise withstand!

Nu hœret wie diu hervart
Now hear how the campaign

gẹordent und geprüevet wart
ordered and arrayed became

ûz dem lande ze Korntîn.
out-of the land at Korntin.

Rîâl der künic von Jeraphîn
Rial the king of Jeraphin

vuor ie vor mit sîner schar.
fared ever before with his troop.

sîn banier was alsus gevar:
his banner was thus colored:

geteilet wîz unde rôt.
divided white and red.

enmitten dar inne bôt
in-the-middle there in offered

ein tier von golde liehten schîn;
a beast of gold bright shine;

daz muose wol gezieret sîn,
that must well adorned be,

geschicket als ein helfant:
shaped as an elephant:

dâ bî sîn wâfen was bekant,
there by his arms were known,

swar der edel rîter vuor.
wherever the noble knight fared.

diu volge im mänlich ellen swuor.
the following to-him manly valor swore.

er was ein helt, âne wân;
he was a hero, without doubt;

sîn hant vil dicke hêt getân
his hand very often had done

dâ von man im prîses jach.
there from one to-him prize granted.

die galiôte man vlühtic sach
the galleys one fleeing saw

vor im vil dicke ûf dem mer:
before him very often on the sea:

er hêt entschumpfiert ir wer.
he had routed their defense.

ouch lâgen im gelîche
also lay to-him alike

zwei rîchiu künicrîche;
two rich kingdoms;

der gewaltes hêt er sich erwert.
of-their power had he himself defended.

nu hœret wie der künic vert!
now hear how the king fares!

sehs helfande vuort er;
six elephants led he;

die truogen nâch des heldes ger
they carried after the hero's desire

wîchûs unde bercvrit.
war-houses and towers.

dâ riten tûsent rîter mit
there rode thousand knights with

und vünf tûsent sarjant;
and five thousand foot-soldiers;

die truogen lanzen in der hant,
they carried lances in the hand,

buckeler, swert unde bogen.
bucklers, swords and bows.

uns enhabe dịụ âventiure betrogen,
us unless-have the adventure deceived,

si zogẹten ûz dem lande dar
they marched out-of the land there

mit manger banier lieht gevar.
with many-a banner brightly colored.

dar nâch reit diu künigîn;
there after rode the queen;

an der geverte was wol schîn
on the retinue was well visible

daz ir des wunsches niht gebrast.
that to-her of-the ideal nothing lacked.

si vuortę mit ir der sælden last
she led with her the blessedness' load

ûf dem helfande, —
on the elephant,—

geprüevet âne schande: —
arrayed without shame:—

zwelf mägde wünniclîche,
twelve maidens delightful,

edel unde rîche,
noble and rich,

gekleit in grüenen samît;
clad in green samite;

roc unde mantel wît
gown and mantle wide

mit lûtern vedern gefurriert.
with clear furs lined.

ir houbet wâren geziert
their heads were adorned

mit schapeln bluomîn.
with garlands of-flowers.

ir schœne gap den andern schîn
their beauty gave the others shine

enstrîte gegęn dem liehten tage.
in-strife against the bright day.

swie in jâmer unde klage
however to-them grief and lament

gæbe vrouwęn Lîamêren tôt,
gave lady Liamere's death,

iedoch wârn in die münde rôt
yet were to-them the mouths red

unde ir antlütze lieht.
and their faces bright.

ouchn sol ich vergezzen nieht
also shall I forget not

wie vrouwe Lârîe was gekleit.
how lady Larie was clad.

als uns diu âventiure seit,
as to-us the adventure says,

ir schœne gegen der sunnen streit.
her beauty against the sun strove.

Ein hemde wîz als ein swan
A shift white as a swan

truoc diu gespil der sælden an;
wore the playmate of-the blessedness on;

daz was von sîden kleine.
that was of silk fine.

an ietwederm beine
on each leg

zwêne schuohe von borten guot.
two shoes of braid good.

si jehent alle daz hôhen muot
they say all that high spirit

diu rîcheit dem herzen gît.
the richness to-the heart gives.

daz mac wol sîn, doch ist mîn strît
that may well be, yet is my contention

daz nie grôze hôchvart
that never great pride

dehein herze von reiner art
no heart of pure kind

gewan von grôzer rîcheit.
won from great richness.

daz sî iu allen samt geseit:
that be to-you all together told:

daz ungeslähte treit übermuot.
the ill-born bears arrogance.

ein pfelle, gelpfer danne ein gluot
a brocade, yellower than an ember

vrouwen Lârîen was gesniten;
for-lady Larie was cut;

dem was furrieren niht vermiten
on-it was lining not avoided

von hermen die wâren blanc.
of ermines that were white.

ir roc und ir mantel lanc,
her gown and her mantle long,

wol bezogen und gesniten
well trimmed and cut

nâch der Franzoiser siten,
after the French's custom,

[der mantel] mit offener snüere.
[the mantle] with open laces.

nâch rîcheit gevüere
after richness befitting

ein zobel umbe und umbe gie, —
a sable about and about went,—

beidiu orte er bevie, —
both edges it enclosed,—

swarz, grâ unde breit.
black, gray and broad.

diu vrouwe hêt umb sich geleit
the lady had about herself laid

einen riemen von Îberne;
a strap from Hibernia;

als die liehten sterne
as the bright stars

daz edel[gẹ]steine dạrûffe lac.
the noble-gems thereon lay.

ein rubîn, lieht alsam der tac,
a ruby, bright as the day,

was zuo der rinken wol ergraben,
was to the buckle well engraved,

von golde ein tracke dạrûf erhaben.
of gold a dragon thereon raised.

diu vrouwe truoc ein vürspan
the lady wore a brooch

dâne was niht mê gesmîdes an
there was not more of-smithwork on

niwan ein dorn guldîn;
except-for a pin golden;

dâ mit hafte sị ir buosem în.
there with fastened she her bosom in.

daz vürspan was ein edel stein,
the brooch was a noble stone,

der doch drîer varwe schein.
which yet of-three colors shone.

daz ein teil ein smâragde was
the one part an emerald was

grüener danne dehein gras;
greener than any grass;

ein saphir was des andern schîn;
a sapphire was of-the other shine;

daz dritte ein edele rubîn:
the third a noble ruby:

zwêne lewen und ein ar.
two lions and an eagle.

alsus hât gemeistert dar
thus has mastered there

nâch dem wunsche ditze werc
after the ideal this work

mit worten Wirnt von Grâvenberc.
with words Wirnt of Grafenberg.

der pfelle den si an truoc
the brocade which she on wore

der was von golde guot genuoc,
it was of gold good enough,

geworht in der heidenschaft;
wrought in the heathendom;

dâ ist der sinne hœhstiu kraft.
there is of-the wits highest power.

dâ lâgen vor den vrouwen fier
there lay before the ladies proud

wurfzabel und kurrier
backgammon and courier

geworht von helfenbeine.
wrought from ivory.

mit edelem gesteine
with noble gems

spilten si, mit holze niht,
played they, with wood not,

als man nû vrouwen spilen siht.
as one now ladies play sees.

si hêten kurzewîle vil
they had pastime much

von manger hande seitspil
from many-a kind string-music

daz die vrouwen kunden;
which the ladies knew;

dâ mit si überwunden
there with they overcame

ir jâmer und ir herzeleit.
their grief and their heart's-sorrow.

alsus was in der wunsch bereit;
thus was to-them the ideal ready;

ir gespile was diu sælicheit.
their playmate was the blessedness.

Êrec und sîn geselleschaft
Erec and his company

swenne die wolden grôze kraft
whenever they would great force

herzenlîcher vreude spehen
of-heartfelt joy espy

und minniclîche schœne sehen,
and lovely beauty see,

sô giengen si zer künigîn;
so went they to-the queen;

dâ vunden si der sælden schîn
there found they the blessedness' shine

und schœner kurzewîle vil
and of-beautiful pastime much

von zabel und von seitspil
from board-game and from string-music

und süeze ougen weide.
and sweet eyes' pasture.

nie niemen wart sô leide,
never no-one became so sorrowful,

und solder zuo den vrouwen gên,
and (if)-should-he to the ladies go,

ern müese leides âne gestên.
unless-he must of-sorrow without stand.

die von gebürte wâren grôz,
those-who by birth were great,

vürsten oder vürsten gẹnôz,
princes or princes' peers,

die lie man ûf daz kastel.
them let one up-to the castle.

dâ was diu wîle harte snel
there was the while very swift

mit vreuden schierẹ zergangen.
with joys quickly passed.

wen moht dâ erlangen
whom might there weary

dâ der wunsch gẹordent was?
where the ideal ordered was?

niuwe bluomen, grüenez gras
new flowers, green grass

was ie töuwigez drîn gestreut.
was ever dewy therein strewn.

dâ von sich lîp und herze vreut
there from itself body and heart gladdens

und daz diu beidiu twinget,
and what them both compels,

dâ mit diu sælde ringet —
there with the blessedness wrestles—

daz ist der edeln vrouwen gruoz,
that is the noble ladies' greeting,

den diu volge jehen muoz
to-which the following acknowledge must

daz niht dem herzen nâher gê,
that nothing to-the heart nearer go,

dem tuont si wol unde wê, —
to-it do they well and woe,—

die sâzen hie nâch prîses kür.
they sat here after prize's choice.

ir ougen wider unde vür
their eyes back and forth

sâhen in diu herze;
looked into the hearts;

dâ von vil lîhte ein smerze
there from very easily a pain

moht etelîchem widervarn,
might to-someone befall,

dâ vor sich niemen kan bewarn.
there before himself no-one can guard.

sus vuor diu vrouwe Lârîe,
thus fared the lady Larie,

des wunsches âmîe.
of-the ideal beloved.

ob ir kastel vlouc ein van;
above her castle flew a banner;

dâ was von golde gebildet an
there was of gold formed on

ein tier, als daz von Roimunt
a beast, as that of Roimunt

ir vriunde tet die strâze kunt
to-her friend made the street known

in daz lant zuo Korntîn.
into the land to Korntin.

sus was des selben tieres schîn
thus was of-the same beast's shine

in einen swarzen samît
into a black samite

gesniten lanc unde wît;
cut long and wide;

daz was ir wâfen zaller stunt;
that was her arms at-all hours;

dâ bî was ir der jâmer kunt
there by was to-her the grief known

mit leide umb ir vater tôt,
with sorrow for her father's death,

als diu triuwe ir gebôt.
as the faith to-her commanded.

daz tier mant si der selben nôt.
the beast reminded her of-the same distress.

Als ez ist geseit mir,
As it is told to-me,

zwêne künige pflâgen ir:
two kings took-care of-her:

der herre Îwein und Êrec;
the lord Iwein and Erec;

die riten mit ir ûf den wec.
they rode with her upon the way.

driu tûsent rîter vor und nâch,
three thousand knights before and after,

dâ man under vüeren sach
where one among lead saw

vil liehtiu baniere.
very bright banners.

mit golde harte ziere
with gold very adorned

vil schilte sach man glîzen,
many shields saw one gleam,

mangen helm wîzen
many-a helm white

gebunden ûf die soume;
bound upon the pack-horses;

rîche pfärdes zoume
rich palfrey's bridles

mit guldînen schellen;
with golden bells;

die hôrte man verre hellen,
them heard one far ring,

die busûn blâsen in dem her.
the trumpets blow in the host.

iegelîch man mit sîner wer
each man with his defense

reit als er kunde strîten.
rode as he could fight.

vil knappen sach man rîten,
many squires saw one ride,

die schœniu ors mit in zugen;
who beautiful steeds with them led;

habichẹ unde valken vlugen
hawks and falcons flew

und aller hande vederspil.
and of-all kinds hunting-birds.

als in kom des âbendẹs zil
when to-them came the evening's goal

10665 und si diu hitze ein teil verlie,
and them the heat a part left,

iegelîchez sînen vogel vie
each its bird caught

den ez vâhen solde.
which it catch should.

als her Gâwein wolde
as lord Gawein would

drî künịge riten nâch dem her;
three kings rode after the host;

10670 die vuorten tœtlîche wer:
they carried deadly defense:

starkiu sper von Angran.
strong spears from Angran.

man vuorte mit den vürsten dan
one led with the princes away

wol zweinzic vuoder oder mêr;
well twenty cartloads or more;

gabilôt und atigêr
javelins and darts

10675 truogen die sarjande.
carried the foot-soldiers.

sus vuor ûz sînem lande
thus fared out-of his land

her Gwîgâlois, der werde helt.
lord Gwigalois, the worthy hero.

zwei tûsent rîter ûz erwelt
two thousand knights out chosen

huoten hinden nâch dem her;
guarded behind after the host;

die vuorten vreislîche wer:
they carried fearsome defense:

tûsent schützen mit starken bogen.
thousand archers with strong bows.

swenne die wurden ûf gezogen
whenever they became up drawn

und man die vînde komen sach,
and one the enemies come saw,

sô wær mîn lîp dâ ze swach
so were my body there too weak

ze rîten under in gewesen;
to ride among them been;

ich wæn unlange wære genesen.
I believe not-long were survived.

einen helfant zôch ein knappe kluoc
an elephant led a squire clever

der des küniges kamer truoc
which the king's chamber carried

und sînen vanen vor der schar;
and his banner before the troop;

des muosens alle nemen war.
of-that must-they all take heed.

ez was ein swarzer samît,
it was a black samite,

gesniten lanc unde wît;
cut long and wide;

von golde ein rat darinne schein;
of gold a wheel therein shone;

daz zieret manic edel stein.
that adorned many-a noble stone.

der samît geblüemet was
the samite flowered was

mit dem goldẹ von Kaukasas.
with the gold of Caucasus.

daz brehent als ein queckiu gluot
that gleams as a living ember

geviuret ûz der vinster tuot.
fired out-of the darkness does.

die zwênẹ künịge ûz Asîâ
the two kings out-of Asia

zwei rîchiu banier vuorten dâ,
two rich banners led there,

Zaradech und Panschavar.
Zaradech and Panschavar.

ir wâfen was ein härmîn ar
their arms was an ermine eagle

in einem pfellẹ von Ninivê;
in a brocade from Nineveh;

der was grüenẹ als ein klê,
it was green as a clover,

gebildẹt mit rôtem golde gar;
formed with red gold wholly;

dâ mit si pflâgen einer schar.
there with they tended a troop.

diu banier vlugen über velt.
the banners flew over field.

vil mange hütte und gezelt
very many-a hut and tent

diu starken mûle truogen.
the strong mules carried.

vil olbenden sluogen
many camels drove

die koufliute vor in hin;
the merchants before them thither;

die truogen rîcheit gewin,
they carried richness gain,

spîse und alsô rîch gewant
food and so rich clothing

daz man ninder bezzerz vant
that one nowhere better found

ze Kriechẹn und in der heidenschaft. 10715
in Greece and in the heathendom.

sus vuor der künic mit sîner kraft
thus fared the king with his force

vil rîterlîche vür Namûr
very knightly before Namur

ze leide Liôn, der vreuden schûr;
to sorrow Lion, the joys' storm;

diu vart wart mangem manne sûr.
the journey became many-a man sour.

XXXVII · THE SIEGE OF NAMUR

Amire's embalmed body is set on a pillar before the city, and Namur's walls, moat, and engines are described. Gawein posts the princes, and Queen Elamie with Marine and Adan, before the gates; the poet speaks of false generosity; and Larie's tent and the camp's market are described. At dawn the assault begins, banner by banner, and the fighting is fierce; Marine captures a count from Turkey, but Duke Galopear of Greece kills her with his spear, and Count Adan avenges her.

Si kômen an dem zwelften tage 10720
They came on the twelfth day

nâch des boten widersage.
after the messenger's defiance.

den künịc Amîren brâhtens dar.
the king Amire brought-they there.

des rê wart, gebalsamt gar,
whose corpse became, embalmed wholly,

geleit in einen edeln stein
laid in a noble stone

ûf eine sûl, dâ durch er schein
upon a pillar, there through he shone

vor der stat übẹr al daz her.
before the city over all the host.

si vunden rîterlîche wer
they found knightly defense

al umbe und umbe ûf dem graben;
all about and about on the moat;

dâ wart vil manic strît erhaben.
there became very many-a strife raised.

diu stat lac einhalp an dem mer;
the city lay on-one-side on the sea;

dâ was si sicher vor dem her.
there was it safe from the host.

ein starkiu mûrẹ si gar bevie;
a strong wall it wholly enclosed;

vil tief ein grabe drumbe gie,
very deep a moat thereabout went,

dâ durch ein lûter wazzer vlôz;
there through a clear water flowed;

daz was ze guoter mâze grôz,
that was in good measure great,

geleit durch ein gebirge dar.
led through a mountain-range there.

her Gwîgâlois mit sîner schar
lord Gwigalois with his troop

belegt die stat unz an daz mer.
besieged the city until to the sea.

diu was berüstet wol mit wer:
it was equipped well with defense:

türne, bercvrit, ärker
towers, keeps, oriels

vil âne mâze stuont der
very without measure stood of-them

ûf der mûre ob dem graben.
upon the wall above the moat.

dâ man den tôt mit solde laben
there one the death with should refresh

und dâ mit manger wart erslagen,
and there with many-a-one became slain,

des was vil ûf die wer getragen:
of-that was much upon the defense carried:

guot geschoz, steine vil.
good missiles, stones many.

ein dinc daz was des tôdes spil:
one thing that was the death's game:

pfeterære und grôze mangen.
catapults and great mangonels.

diu mûre was behangen
the wall was hung

mit grôzen blochen sinwel;
with great logs round;

diu wâren an der wer sô snel:
they were on the defense so swift:

swen iemen an den graben gie,
whenever anyone to the moat went,

und man diu bloch vallen lie,
and one the logs fall let,

sô hurten si die vînde wider
so thrust they the enemies back

in den tiefen graben nider;
into the deep moat down;

dâ von den lîp vil manger vlôs
there from the life very many-a-one lost

des hant vil werlîch ende kôs.
whose hand very warlike end chose.

aht porte giengen in die stat:
eight gates went into the city:

zwô warten ûf des meres stat,
two looked upon the sea's shore,

die sehs her ûz an daz velt.
the six hither out to the field.

man vant dâ strîtes widergelt
one found there of-strife repayment

swiez der man geruochte,
however-it the man desired,

als ez sîn ellen suochte.
as it his valor sought.

her Gâwein, der des heres pflac
lord Gawein, who the host tended

nam vride unz an den andern tac
took truce until to the next day

von dem her und ûz der stat,
from the host and out-of the city,

des man dâ beidenthalben bat.
of-which one there on-both-sides begged.

von dem grabẹn an diu gezelt
from the moat to the tents

was ein alsô breitez velt
was a so broad field

daz si vor schüzzen wâren vrî.
that they from shots were free.

nu hœret wie gẹordent sî
now hear how ordered be

daz gesæze, ob ir welt.
the siege, if you will.

her Gâwein, der wîse helt,
lord Gawein, the wise hero,

hêt geschaffet zuo dem mer
had placed toward the sea

Rîâl den künic von dem her
Rial the king from the host

gegẹn der portẹ diu dâ ûz gie;
against the gate which there out went;

tûsent rîter er im lie.
thousand knights he to-him left.

dô lâgen dem næhsten tor
then lay to-the next gate

zwêne rîche künige vor:
two rich kings before:

Zaradech und Panschavar;
Zaradech and Panschavar;

den lie man tûsent rîter dar,
to-them left one thousand knights there,

die ir gebotes nâmen war.
who their command took heed.

Dô lâgen gegẹn der dritten
Then lay against the third

porte, vil nâch enmitten,
gate, very near in-the-middle,

der künic Îwein und Êrec;
the king Iwein and Erec;

der hende kunden wîten wec
whose hands could wide way

houwen durch die rîterschaft;
hew through the knighthood;

si hêten kunst unde kraft;
they had skill and strength;

den wâren tûsent rîter bî.
to-them were thousand knights by.

nu hœreṭ wer vor der vierden sî:
now hear who before the fourth be:

her Gwîgâlois, der künic hêr,
lord Gwigalois, the king lordly,

wan dâ vant man strîtes mêr
for there found one of-strife more

dannẹ vor deheinem andern tor;
than before any other gate;

dâ was her Gâwein mit im vor
there was lord Gawein with him before

und tûsent rîter ûz erkorn.
and thousand knights out chosen.

ein küniginne wol geborn
a queen well born

vor der vünften porte lac;
before the fifth gate lay;

der geselleschefte pflac
of-the company took-care

vrouwe Marîne und grâve Adân;
lady Marine and count Adan;

der gebot wârn undertân
to-their command were subject

ouch tûsent rîter unverzaget.
also thousand knights undaunted.

vrouwẹ Êlamîe hiez diu maget;
lady Elamie was-called the maiden;

der was diu milte an geborn;
to-her was the generosity in born;

diu hêt ouch in ir hant gesworn.
it had also into her hand sworn.

angenomen milte schierẹ zergêt.
assumed generosity quickly vanishes.

seht wie daz mülrat gestêt
see how the mill-wheel stands

swennẹ ez niht snelles wazzers hât!
when it not of-swift water has!

dem gelîche ich milter liute rât
to-it liken I of-generous people's means

als der dem herren entwîchet,
as that to-the lord gives-way,

diu erge wider slîchet
the meanness back creeps

aber zuo dem herzen.
again to the heart.

dâ beginnẹt diu milte smerzen,
there begins the generosity to-pain,

wan si dâ niht wesen sol;
for it there not be shall;

der wehsel gevellẹt mir niht wol!
the exchange pleases me not well!

ditz mære ist hie mit undersniten
this tale is here with interrupted

und durch die [g]warheit geriten
and through the [t]ruth ridden

den alten und den niuwen siten.
the old and the new customs.

Vor der sehsten porte lac
Before the sixth gate lay

der sich strîtes ouch bewac:
who himself of-strife also resolved:

der truhsæze von Roimunt;
the steward of Roimunt;

dem was wol strîtes vuore kunt.
to-him was well strife's conduct known.

bî im lac der grâvẹ Môrâl,
by him lay the count Moral,

Ursîn und Ambigâl;
Ursin and Ambigal;

die hêten tûsent rîter dâ.
they had thousand knights there.

her Gâwein der teilte sâ
lord Gawein he divided at-once

die sarjande underz her,
the foot-soldiers among-the host,

iegelîchen mit sîner wer:
each with his defense:

ûf sehs helfande
upon six elephants

zwei hundert sarjande.
two hundred foot-soldiers.

die wurfen unde schuzzen
they threw and shot

daz die zäher vluzzen
that the drops flowed

bluotic durch daz îsengwant.
bloody through the iron-clothing.

iegelîcher schar ein helfant;
for-each troop an elephant;

die kundẹn entwîchen unde stên,
they could give-way and stand,

mit strîte gegẹn den vînden gên:
with strife against the enemies go:

sus wâren si gelêret.
thus were they taught.

ein gezelt daz was gehêret
a tent that was adorned

dâ vrouwẹ Lârîe inne saz,
where lady Larie in sat,

daz nie dehein gezelt baz
that never any tent better

von pfelle wart gezieret,
with brocade became adorned,

mit golde geparrieret.
with gold striped.

dar ûffe stuont ein guldîn tier
there upon stood a golden beast

von edelem gesteine fier.
of noble gems proud.

dar obe vlouc ein liehter van;
there above flew a bright banner;

dâ was daz selbe tier an
there was the same beast on

mit vil lûterm golde
with very pure gold

gebildet als si wolde.
formed as she would.

von ledẹr ein huot hienc dâ bî
of leather a hat hung there by

der daz gezelt machet vrî
which the tent made free

des regens, sô der nider gôz.
of-the rain, when it down poured.

gegẹn der sunnen stuont ez blôz.
toward the sun stood it bare.

vil grôziu rîcheit dạrunder was:
very great richness thereunder was:

mit pfelle von Kaukasas
with brocade of Caucasus

vil bette wârn gedecket wol;
many beds were covered well;

diu sâzen edler vrouwen vol.
they sat of-noble ladies full.

daz selbe gezelt was sô wît
the same tent was so wide

daz ich wæn deheinez sît
that I believe no since

iemen wîter kunde gespehen.
anyone wider could espy.

man mohtẹ dâ rîche vürsten sehen
one could there rich princes see

rîten wider unde vür,
ride back and forth,

iegelîch rîter nâch sîner kür,
each knight after his choice,

dâ er sînen vriunt gesprach
where he his friend spoke-with

und ouch die künigîn gesach;
and also the queen saw;

dar nâch si riten wider în
there after they rode back in

dâ iegelîcher solde sîn.
where each should be.

si hêten alle spîse genuoc.
they had all food enough.

einen markẹt man bî în ûf sluoc;
a market one by them up struck;

dâ vant man michel rîcheit
there found one great richness

von aller hande spîse bereit
of all kinds food ready

und swaz man koufen wolde
and whatever one buy would

von gewande und von golde,
of clothing and of gold,

nâch des mannes muote.
after the man's mind.

dem here schuof man huote:
for-the host made one guard:

hundert rîṭer ie von der schar,
hundred knights each from the troop,

die daz her behuoten gar
who the host guarded wholly

vor den vîndẹn unz an den tac.
from the enemies until to the day.

vil süezes schalles man dâ pflac
very sweet noise one there tended

mit hollerblâsen ûf der wer.
with elder-pipes upon the defense.

umbe und umbe unz an daz mer
about and about until to the sea

huoten si mit vlîze
guarded they with diligence

unz daz des tages wîze
until that the day's whiteness

ôstern durch diu wolken dranc.
from-the-east through the clouds pressed.

von glocken hôrṭe man mangen klanc
of bells heard one many-a clang

in der stat, wan diu was wît.
in the city, for it was wide.

dô dûhte ouch des die ûzern zît
then seemed also of-that to-the outer-ones time

daz si sich bereiten
that they themselves readied

gegẹn den arbeiten.
against the toils.

ir îsenhosen schuohtens an;
their iron-hose shod-they on;

dar nâch vuor ein iegelîch man
there after fared an each man

der kristen was und dens gezam
who Christian was and to-whom-it befitted

dâ ẹr eine messe vernam.
where he a mass heard.

die vürsten und her Gâwein
the princes and lord Gawein

des âbendẹs wâren wordẹn enein
of-the evening were become at-one

wen si ze sturme solden gên,
when they to assault should go,

mit strîte gegẹn den vînden stên.
with strife against the enemies stand.

der rîter ors wâren bereit,
the knights' steeds were ready,

ûf iegelîchẹz zwô decke geleit
upon each two covers laid

von îsen und von pfelle.
of iron and of brocade.

Êrec und sîn geselle
Erec and his companion

die pflâgen einer banier lieht.
they tended a banner bright.

ouch sol ich vergezzen nieht
also shall I forget not

ichn sagiu wie diu gẹprüevet sî:
unless-I tell-you how it arrayed be:

ein rôter pfellẹ von Ârâbî,
a red brocade from Arabia,

darinne ein rat, von Ninivê
therein a wheel, from Nineveh

eins pfelles grüene alsam ein klê;
of-a brocade green as a clover;

der pflâgẹn die helde mit ir kraft
it tended the heroes with their strength

durch ḍẹs küniges geselleschaft,
for the king's companionship,

zuo dem si wâren komen dar.
to whom they were come there.

dô wartẹ vrouwẹn Êlamîen schar,
then waited lady Elamie's troop,

der edeln küniginne,
of-the noble queen,

mit mänlîchem sinne
with manly mind

einer banier diu was blâ;
for-a banner which was blue;

mit rîcher koste was aldâ
with rich cost was there

von golde ein krône drin gesniten;
of gold a crown therein cut;

mit der stolze helde riten.
with it proud heroes rode.

dem truhsæzen von Roimunt
to-the steward of Roimunt

und sînen [gẹ]sellen tet man kunt
and his [com]panions made one known

ze warten einer banier
to watch-for a banner

diu was swarz; darinne ein tier
which was black; therein a beast

gesniten enmitten vlouc,
cut in-the-middle flew,

mit dem goldẹ van Azagouc
with the gold of Azagouc

gezieret und gemeistert dar.
adorned and mastered there.

sus lac der vrouwẹn Lârîen schar
thus lay the lady Larie's troop

gegẹn einer porte bî dem mer.
against a gate by the sea.

dô wârens beidenthalp ze wer,
then were-they on-both-sides at defense,

daz ûzer und daz inner her.
the outer and the inner host.

Die porte[n] wurden ûf getân.
The gates became up opened.

ûz iegelîcher vlouc ein van;
out-of each flew a banner;

vünf hundert rîter volgten nâch;
five hundred knights followed after;

den was gegẹn den vînden gâch.
to-them was against the enemies hasty.

si hêten alle geneigẹt ir sper;
they had all lowered their spears;

man dorftẹ niht ruofen 'herâ! her!'
one needed not to-call 'here! here!'

wan si kêrten gegẹn der schar
for they turned toward the troop

dâ si der herte nâmen war.
where they the hardest took heed.

die schilte druhten sị an sich.
the shields pressed they to themselves.

mit speren wart dâ manic stich
with spears became there many-a stab

gevrumt durch daz îsengwant,
made through the iron-clothing,

daz sîn daz herzẹ dạrunder enpfant.
that of-it the heart thereunder felt.

die ûzern wâren gegẹn in komen
the outer-ones were against them come

und hêten alle ir ors genomen
and had all their steeds taken

ze beiden sîten mit den sporn.
on both sides with the spurs.

die helde treip der grimme zorn
the heroes drove the grim anger

zem strîte und mänlîchiu gir.
to-the strife and manly desire.

durch helm und durch herseni[e]r
through helm and through mail-coif

mit jost dâ manger wart erslagen.
with joust there many-a-one became slain.

man sach die trunzûne ragen
one saw the lance-stumps jut

durch die schilte alniuwe.
through the shields brand-new.

sine brâchen niht ir triuwe;
they broke not their faith;

beidenthalb was widerboten.
on-both-sides was defiance-sent.

man sach vil mangen helm roten
one saw very many-a helm redden

von bluote der ê lûter was.
from blood which before clear was.

die ringe riren als ein glas
the rings fell as a glass

von stichen und von starken slegen.
from stabs and from strong blows.

dâ lac vil manic werder degen
there lay very many-a worthy thane

gehurt und geslagen nider,
rammed and struck down,

dem niemen mohte gehelfen wider.
to-whom no-one could help again.

die innern entwichen vür diu tor;
the inner-ones gave-way before the gates;

dâ huop sich solich strîten vor
there rose itself such fighting before

daz daz bluot nider gôz
that the blood down poured

und durch die wâfenröcke vlôz.
and through the surcoats flowed.

mit slegen den andern niemen trouc.
with blows the other no-one deceived.

daz viur ûz den helmen vlouc,
the fire out-of the helms flew,

gemischet mit bluote daz was rôt.
mixed with blood that was red.

sicherheit dâ niemen bôt;
surety there no-one offered;

dâ was dehein gevaterschaft:
there was no godfathership:

ez schiet niwan des tôdes kraft
it parted only the death's strength

mit vil vîntlîchen slegen.
with very hostile blows.

allenthalben bî den wegen
everywhere by the ways

sach man die wunden töunde ligen
saw one the wounded dying lie

die des bluotes wârn ersigen,
who of-the blood were drained,

und vil mangen tôten
and very many-a dead-one

der sêre was verschrôten.
who sorely was hewn.

mit diu hêt sich der sturm erhaben;
with that had itself the assault raised;

die sarjande an den graben
the foot-soldiers to the moat

mit antwerke giengen;
with engines went;

dar ûf si enpfiengen
there upon they received

diu bloch, sô man diu vallen lie.
the logs, when one them fall let.

daz geschoz als diu snîe gie
the missiles as the snow went

und die würfe underz her.
and the throws among-the host.

dô mischten sich ir beider wer
then mingled themselves of-them both defense

über den grabẹn unz an daz mer.
over the moat until to the sea.

Die helfande volgẹten mit
The elephants followed with

dem her nâch ir gelêrtem sit
the host after their taught custom

gegẹn den vînden ûf den graben.
against the enemies upon the moat.

diu wîchûs wâren dạrûf erhaben
the war-houses were thereupon raised

gelîch hôch der mûre.
equally high to-the wall.

vil herte nâchgebûre
very hard neighbors

wâren in die sarjande.
were to-them the foot-soldiers.

ir manheit verswande
their manhood consumed

geschozzes unde steine vil.
of-missiles and stones many.

sus spilten si des tôdes spil
thus played they the death's game

vil nâch unz an mitten tac.
very near until to mid day.

vil manic helt dâ bî in lac
very many-a hero there by them lay

ûzen unde innen tôt,
outside and inside dead,

vil orse erslagẹn; von bluote rôt
many steeds slain; from blood red

wart vil manic îsengwant.
became very many-a iron-clothing.

von den helden dâ verswant
from the heroes there vanished

mit manger rîchen jost der walt.
with many-a rich joust the forest.

dâ wart vil manger abe gevalt
there became very many-a-one off felled

der sînen lîp zehant verlôs.
who his life at-once lost.

vrouwe Marîne ir erkôs
lady Marine for-herself chose

einen grâven von Turkîe.
a count of Turkey.

er und sîn kumpanîe
he and his company

tâten guote rîterschaft.
did good knighthood.

diu maget schiet in mit ir kraft
the maiden parted him with her strength

von allen sînen [gẹ]sellen;
from all his [com]panions;

si beschutte in âne vellen
she protected him without felling

und nam sîne sicherheit;
and took his surety;

in ir gezelt er dô reit.
into her tent he then rode.

diu maget nam ein starkez sper;
the maiden took a strong spear;

von rabîne reit si her
from charge rode she hither

ir ors gegẹn den vînden wider;
her steed against the enemies back;

einen vürsten stach si nider;
a prince stabbed she down;

den zugen ir gesellen hin.
him drew her companions thither.

dâ huop sich vlust und gewin;
there rose itself loss and gain;

diu maget tetz dâ harte guot.
the maiden did-it there very well.

si truoc mänlîchen muot
she bore manly spirit

und vil reinen magetuom.
and very pure maidenhood.

sị erwarp dâ rîterlîchen ruom
she won there knightly fame

mit sper und ouch mit schilte.
with spear and also with shield.

dar zuo was si milte;
there to was she generous;

diu ist der êren krône.
that is of-the honors crown.

sus lebt diu maget schône
thus lived the maiden beautifully

mit vil ganzer werdicheit,
with very whole worthiness,

unz si ein scharfez sper versneit.
until her a sharp spear cut.

daz treip ein helt mit joste dar,
that drove a hero with joust there,

der herzoge Galopêar;
the duke Galopear;

von Kriechen was er geborn;
from Greece was he born;

ûf die brust hêt ers erkorn
upon the breast had he-it chosen

und valte die maget tôte nider.
and felled the maiden dead down.

dô er wolde wenden wider,
when he would turn back,

dô erreit in der grâve Adân;
then overtook him the count Adan;

mit einem sper von Angran
with a spear from Angran

stach er den helt und rach die maget.
stabbed he the hero and avenged the maiden.

ir gelîche nie wart betaget
her like never became dawned

diu sô sêre würde geklaget.
who so sorely should-be lamented.

After six weeks of fighting Lion jousts with Gawein, who is wounded by another prince; in the melee Gwigalois charges, Gawein kills Lion, and the city falls, though Zaradech is shot dead. The burghers swear fealty, Moral receives Namur, and Amire is buried beside Liamere. The allies depart, most with gifts, Adan bearing Marine's body, and Gwigalois sets out for Britain with Larie, until a page brings word that his mother has died of grief and gives him her ring.

Êrec und her Îwein,
Erec and lord Iwein,

an ir getât dâ wol schein
on their deed there well showed

daz si wâren manhaft;
that they were manly;

si tâten solhe rîterschaft
they did such knighthood

dâ von ich wol sprechen mac.
there of I well speak may.

die wîle ḥer Gwîgâlois dâ lac
the while lord Gwigalois there lay

vor der stat mit sînem her.
before the city with his host.

man vant dâ rîterlîche wer
one found there knightly defense

ze rosse und ouch ze vuoze;
on horse and also on foot;

daz was ir unmuoze.
that was their occupation.

sehs wochen alle tage
six weeks all days

hôrten si dâ niuwe klage:
heard they there new lament:

‘dort lît der wunt! der hie erslagen!’
‘there lies the wounded! the-one here slain!’

man sach sich wider ein ander tragen
one saw themselves back one other carry

als ein vride gegeben wart.
when a truce given became.

diu swert wâren ungespart,
the swords were unspared,

diu hôrte man verre klingen,
them heard one far ring,

durch liehte helme dringen.
through bright helms press.

eins morgens vruo Lîôn ûz reit;
one morning early Lion out rode;

zer joste durch sîne manheit
to-the joust for his manhood

vordert er herren Gâwein dar;
challenged he lord Gawein there;

in dûhte des er hêt in gar
him seemed of-that he had him wholly

gewalticlîche in sîner hant.
mightily in his hand.

Lîôn der truoc den serpant
Lion he bore the serpent

mit golde wol gezieret.
with gold well adorned.

der kom gewalopieret
he came galloping

vür den graben ûf daz velt.
before the moat onto the field.

her Gâwein rûmte ouch sîn gezelt;
lord Gawein left also his tent;

durch sînen sun vuort er daz rat
for his son bore he the wheel

gegẹn dem helde vür die stat.
against the hero before the city.

von rabîne sị beide riten
from charge they both rode

ze jost; nâch rîterlîchen siten
to joust; after knightly customs

verstâchen si zwei starkiu sper.
spent they two strong spears.

ein ander vürste gâhte her
an other prince hastened hither

von der stat: Salîn er hiez;
from the city: Salin he was-called;

sîn manheit in niht ruowen liez.
his manhood him not rest let.

ûf den herren Gâwein seiget er;
upon the lord Gawein bore-down he;

durch den schilt mit sînem sper
through the shield with his spear

stach er im eine wunden grôz.
stabbed he to-him a wound great.

daz bluot dô durch die ringe vlôz;
the blood then through the rings flowed;

iedoch zoumt er Lîônen dan.
yet led-by-the-bridle he Lion away.

dô huop sich ûz der stat sân
then rose itself out-of the city at-once

ze helfe im gar des vürsten kraft;
to help to-him wholly the prince's force;

dô mischte sich diu rîterschaft.
then mingled itself the knighthood.

Zaradech und Panschavar
Zaradech and Panschavar

die îlten mit ir rote dar
they hastened with their troop there

und valten mangen rîter nider,
and felled many-a knight down,

der sît niht kom ze[r] joste wider.
who since not came to-the joust back.

Rîâl, der künic von Jeraphîn,
Rial, the king of Jeraphin,

er und die gesellen sîn
he and the companions his

punierten under der vînde schar.
charged among the enemies' troop.

dâ wurden die helme missevar,
there became the helms discolored,

diu swert von bluote erblichen.
the swords from blood faded.

mit slegen und mit stichen
with blows and with stabs

kêrten si gegen der herte.
turned they toward the press.

daz inner her sich werte
the inner host itself defended

mit sô mänlîcher kraft
with so manly strength

daz manic swert unde schaft
that many-a sword and shaft

zebrochen ûf dem velde lac.
broken on the field lay.

vliehens dâ niemen pflac.
of-fleeing there no-one tended.

diu sunne erlûhte dô den tac.
the sun lit then the day.

Her Gwîgâlois punierte dô;
Lord Gwigalois charged then;

des manic herze wart unvrô.
of-that many-a heart became unglad.

mit im her Îwein und Êrec;
with him lord Iwein and Erec;

die machten wît vil engen wec
they made wide very narrow way

mit stichen und mit starken slegen.
with stabs and with strong blows.

dâ viel vil manic werder degen
there fell very many-a worthy thane

von den wîganden;
from the fighters;

den walt si verswanden
the forest they consumed

an der schumpfentiure
in the rout

mit maniger jostiure.
with many-a joust.

der strît wart dâ harte grôz;
the strife became there very great;

daz bluot ûf dem velde vlôz
the blood on the field flowed

von wunden und von tôten
from wounds and from dead

die sêre wârn verschrôten.
who sorely were hewn.

vil schoener rosse lac dâ erslagen;
many of-beautiful horses lay there slain;

dar ûz sach man die schefte ragen
there out saw one the shafts jut

und manger hande zeine,
and of-many kinds rod,

grôz unde kleine.
great and small.

her Gwîgâlois die poinder brach;
lord Gwigalois the charges broke;

einen herzogẹn von Särvîe er stach
a duke of Serbia he stabbed

mit orse betalle nider;
with steed altogether down;

sus hiuw er vür unde wider.
thus hewed he forth and back.

vil mangen tôten valt er
very many-a dead-one felled he

beidiu mit swerte und mit sper,
both with sword and with spear,

unz er den herren Gâwein vant;
until he the lord Gawein found;

der hêt erslagẹn mit sîner hant
he had slain with his hand

Lîônen an der stunde.
Lion at the hour.

ze vliehen dô begunde
to flee then began

gegẹn der stat daz inner her;
toward the city the inner host;

dâ wart enschumpfiert ir wer.
there became routed their defense.

der truhsæze von Roimunt
the steward of Roimunt

und sîne gesellen an der stunt
and his companions at the hour

vil mangen rîter viengen.
very many-a knight caught.

die sarjande giengen
the foot-soldiers went

mit den vînden in die stat.
with the enemies into the city.

dâ mohte ein man wol werden sat
there might a man well become sated

strîtes, swer des gerte.
of-strife, whoever of-it desired.

die helde man dâ werte
the heroes one there resisted

beidiu mit schüzzen und mit slegen.
both with shots and with blows.

Zaradech, ein werder degen,
Zaradech, a worthy thane,

der junge künịc von Asîâ,
the young king of Asia,

wart mit eime schuzze dâ
became with a shot there

gevellet tôter in daz wal.
felled dead into the battlefield.

von vlühte huop sich grôzer schal.
from flight rose itself great noise.

die geste drungen durch diu tor
the guests pressed through the gates

mit den die dâ wâren vor.
with them who there were before.

die strâze wurden enge.
the streets became narrow.

des tôdes gedrenge
the death's throng

huop sich mit den swerten dâ.
rose itself with the swords there.

des küniges vanen sach man sâ
the king's banner saw one at-once

mit gewalte vüeren durch die stat;
with violence lead through the city;

dạrinné von rôtem goldẹ daz rat
therein of red gold the wheel

vlouc gegẹn den lüften.
flew toward the airs.

dô liezen si ir güften.
then left they their arrogance.

die geste gewunnen oberhant.
the guests won upper-hand.

golt, silber und gewant
gold, silver and clothing

und dịẹ aller groesten rîcheit
and the of-all greatest richness

dâ von ie wart geseit,
there of ever became told,

die nâmen die vînde dâ.
that took the enemies there.

her Gwîgâlois beriet sich sâ
lord Gwigalois took-counsel himself at-once

daz man die burgær lieze leben,
that one the burghers should-let live,

ob si sich wolden im ergeben
if they themselves would to-him surrender

mit ir dienste in sînen gẹwalt.
with their service into his power.

gar diu stat, jung[e] und alt,
wholly the city, young and old,

swuoren im dô hulde.
swore to-him then fealty.

dô liez er die schulde
then let he the guilt

und swaz im leides was getân.
and whatever to-him of-sorrow was done.

er gap in einen houbetman
he gave to-them a captain

der des landes wielte
who of-the land ruled

und im die stat behielte.
and for-him the city kept.

dar zuo wolder gîsel haben
there to would-he hostages have

daz widẹr in immer würde erhaben
that against him ever should-be raised

deheiner slahte sicherheit;
of-no kind surety;

daz muose vestẹn ir aller eit.
that must fasten of-them all oath.

der vridẹ dem her dô wart geseit.
the peace to-the host then became told.

Namûr daz was ein herzentuom;
Namur that was a duchy;

vil mangen rîterlîchen ruom
very many-a knightly fame

hêt er erworben der sîn pflac,
had he won who of-it took-care,

der tôter in dem wal gelac.
who dead in the battlefield lay.

daz herzentuom und die stat,
the duchy and the city,

als es diu vrouwẹ Lârîe bat,
as it the lady Larie bade,

lêch er dem grâven Môrâl
enfeoffed he to-the count Moral

mit dem zepter âne twâl.
with the scepter without delay.

sîn staetę diu was niht niuwe;
his constancy it was not new;

er hêt ouch sîne triuwe
he had also his faith

an sîner vrouwęn behalten ie;
toward his lady kept ever;

des man in dô geniezen lie.
of-that one him then profit let.

drîzic tûsent marc von golde
thirty thousand marks of gold

die burgær dô ze solde
the burghers then as pay

gâben dem künięge ir herren.
gave to-the king their lord.

sine wolden im niht verren
they would from-him not remove

ir getriuwęlîch dienest und ir habe;
their faithful service and their possessions;

dâ teilte er den vürsten abe,
there divided he to-the princes off,

dem derz nemen wolde.
to-him who-it take would.

die sarjande mit solde
the foot-soldiers with pay

man nâch ir willen werte,
one after their will granted,

als sîn der man ie gerte.
as of-it the man ever desired.

die gevangen [be]schatzte ein ieglîch man
the captives [r]ansomed an each man

ders ûz dem wal brâhte dan
who-them out-of the battlefield brought away

als er hôhest mohte.
as he highest might.

swaz den wunden tohte
whatever to-the wounded availed

die den künic hôrten an,
who the king belonged to,

daz wart ze gemache in getân.
that became for comfort to-them done.

her Gâwein dô gebunden wart
lord Gawein then bound became

und manic rîter von hôher art,
and many-a knight of high kind,

der rîterlîch was worden wunt.
who knightly was become wounded.

der künic hiez dô an der stunt
the king bade then at the hour

die tôten alle samt begraben,
the dead all together bury,

die wunden binden unde laben.
the wounded bind and refresh.

Lîôn dô schône bestatet wart,
Lion then beautifully interred became,

durch daz er was von hôher art,
for that he was of high kind,

swie er in doch leide hêt getân.
however he to-them yet sorrow had done.

den künịc Âmîren truoc man dan
the king Amire carried one away

mit klägelîchem sêre
with plaintive pain

dâ vrouwe Lîamêre
where lady Liamere

besigelt in einẹm sarke lac.
sealed in a coffin lay.

der was lieht alsam der tac
it was bright as the day

von golde und von gesteine;
of gold and of gems;

dar inne lac diu reine.
there in lay the pure-one.

der sarc der was niuwe;
the coffin it was new;

Lîôn durch ir triuwe
Lion for her faith

hêt si bestatet schône.
had her interred beautifully.

ein guldîniu krône
a golden crown

was gehangen über dẹn sarc, —
was hung over the coffin,—

diu koste mêr dan tûsent marc, —
it cost more than thousand marks,—

durch daz si was ein künigîn.
for that she was a queen.

in den sarc zuo ir dar în
into the coffin to her there in

leit man dô ir gesellen.
laid one then her companion.

mit vil liehten pfellen
with very bright brocades

wurden si bewunden.
became they wound.

an den selben stunden
at the same hours

satzte man dạrîn ein lûter glas;
set one therein a clear glass;

mit balsam daz gevüllet was.
with balsam that filled was.

dâ bî was vrouwẹ Lârîe,
there by was lady Larie,

des wunsches âmîe.
of-the ideal beloved.

si klagt vil sêre ir beider tôt.
she lamented very sorely their both death.

den burgærn si daz gebôt
to-the burghers she that commanded

daz sị ein kapellen mûrten dar
that they a chapel walled there

und daz diu würdẹ von marmel gar:
and that it should-become of marble wholly:

daz gelobten si und liezenz wâr.
that promised they and made-it true.

Her Gwîgâlois der künic hêr,
Lord Gwigalois the king lordly,

des landes marke besatzt er
of-the land's marches garrisoned he

und gebôt in allen bî der wide
and commanded to-them all by the halter

guot gerihte und stæten vride.
good justice and constant peace.

sus kêrte er dan mit sîner schar.
thus turned he away with his troop.

der werde künic Panschafar
the worthy king Panschavar

von Asîâ nam urloup sân;
of Asia took leave at-once;

sînen tôten bruoder vuorte er dan.
his dead brother led he away.

alsô stuont des heldes muot:
so stood the hero's mind:

ern woldẹ deheiner slahte guot;
he would of-no kind goods;

daz was iedoch dem künige leit.
that was yet to-the king grievous.

mit grôzer klage er danne reit.
with great lament he thence rode.

der ẹz von im nemen wolde,
who it from him take would,

mit gesteine und mit golde
with gems and with gold

vulte man in die schilte.
filled one to-them the shields.

her Gwîgâlois was milte
lord Gwigalois was generous

bescheidenlîch widẹr alle diet.
discerningly toward all folk.

ân gâbe niemen von im schiet.
without gift no-one from him parted.

vrouwẹ Êlamîẹ diu künigîn
lady Elamie the queen

diune woldẹ niht lenger bî im sîn;
she would not longer by him be;

si nam urloup von im dâ.
she took leave from him there.

den vürsten allen dancte er sâ
to-the princes all thanked he at-once

mit worten und mit guote,
with words and with goods,

nâch iegelîches muote.
after each-one's mind.

Rîâl und die gesellen sîn
Rial and the companions his

kêrten gegen Jeraphîn.
turned toward Jeraphin.

si vuorten guotes michel kraft
they led of-goods great force

und vil gevangner rîterschaft.
and much captured knighthood.

Darêl, Gamêr und Arîûn
Darel, Gamer and Ariun

die kêrten gegen Belakûn.
they turned toward Belakun.

der grâve Adân nam urloup dô;
the count Adan took leave then;

des herzę vor leide was unvrô:
whose heart for sorrow was unglad:

des twanc in vil strengiu nôt
of-that compelled him very stern distress

umḅ der vrouwęn Marînen tôt
for the lady Marine's death

diu an dem strîte was gelegen.
who in the strife was lain.

si vuortę mit im der werde degen,
her led with him the worthy thane,

er und sîn kumpanîe,
he and his company,

gegęn dem lande z'Alarîe.
toward the land to-Alarie.

drî grâven vuortens mit in hin
three counts led-they with them thither

gevangen; dạran lac grôz gewin.
captured; thereon lay great gain.

sus kêrten dan die geste;
thus turned away the guests;

iegelîcher an sînẹ veste
each to his fortress

brâhte grôze rîcheit;
brought great richness;

daz was den burgæren leit.
that was to-the burghers grievous.

der künic die vürsten sande
the king the princes sent

gegen sînem lande
toward his land

mit dem her ze Korntîn.
with the host to Korntin.

dô vuorter die gesellen sîn,
then led-he the companions his,

Êrec und den herrẹn Îwein,
Erec and the lord Iwein,

Lanzelet und herrẹn Gâwein,
Lanzelet and lord Gawein,

und hundert rîter wol geborn,
and hundred knights well born,

der manheit was ûz erkorn.
whose manhood was out chosen.

daz was dô sîn gesinde.
that was then his household.

zweinzic wol geborner kinde
twenty well born children

vuorter und diu künigin
led-he and the queen

in daz lant ze Britanje hin.
into the land to Britain thither.

sus vuorens âne swære.
thus fared-they without heaviness.

dô brâhte in leidiu mære
then brought to-them sorrowful tidings

ûf dem wege ein garzûn.
on the way a page.

des roc was gel unde brûn
whose coat was yellow and brown

in ein ander geparrieret;
in one other striped;

sîn houbet was gezieret
his head was adorned

mit einem schapel bluomîn;
with a garland of-flowers;

ouch truoc er in den henden sîn
also bore he in the hands his

einen stap von helfenbeine.
a staff of ivory.

der knappe lief vreuden eine,
the squire ran of-joys alone,

ich wæn diu was im kleine.
I believe it was to-him small.

Als er die knappen komen sach,
When he the squires come saw,

der garzûn trûriclîche sprach
the page sadly spoke

‘ei, guote knappen, tuot mir kunt
‘ah, good squires, make to-me known

âne zorn, wider mînen munt,
without anger, toward my mouth,

wes sî ditz gesinde.’
whose be this household.’

dô sprach einez der kinde
then spoke one of-the children

‘daz sol iu unversaget sîn:
‘that shall to-you unrefused be:

des küniges von Korntîn,
of-the king of Korntin,

her Gwîgâlois ist er genant.’
lord Gwigalois is he named.’

dô sprach der garzûn zehant
then spoke the page at-once

‘herre, zuo dem bringet mich;
‘lord, to him bring me;

mit iuwer helfe sô hân ich
with your help so have I

mînen louf wol bewendet;
my running well spent;

ich bin zuo im gesendet.’
I am to him sent.’

der juncherre sprach ‘daz sî getân.’
the young-lord spoke ‘that be done.’

ze sînem herren vuorter în sân.
to his lord led-he him at-once.

der garzûn durch die rîter dranc;
the page through the knights pressed;

an des küniges zoum er spranc.
at the king's bridle he sprang.

her Gwîgâlois sprach wider in
lord Gwigalois spoke toward him

'juncherre, wâ welt ir hin?'
'young-lord, where will you away?'

er sprach 'herre, niwan her.'
he spoke 'lord, only hither.'

bî der rede erkandẹ er
by the speech recognized he

sîner muoter garzûn.
his mother's page.

der geburt was er ein Britûn.
of-the birth was he a Briton.

er sprach 'du solt mir willekomen sîn!
he spoke 'thou shalt to-me welcome be!

nu sage mir von der muoter mîn,
now tell me of the mother my,

wie sich der reine lîp gehabe;
how herself the pure body fares;

ich weiz wol si tet sich abe
I know well she did herself off

ir vreude, dô si mich verlôs.
her joy, when she me lost.

ir herze ist ganzer triuwen flôs.'
her heart is of-whole faith a-stream.'

der garzûn weinende sprach,
the page weeping spoke,

daz ir aller vreude brach
that of-them all joy broke

'owê leider, jâ ịst si tôt!
'alas alas, yes is she dead!

daz vuocte ir jâmer und diu nôt
that brought-about her grief and the distress

die si nâch iuwerm lîbe leit;
which she after your body suffered;

diu swære ir abe ḍạz herze sneit.
the heaviness to-her off the heart cut.

si schiet mit solhen riuwen hin
she parted with such rues thither

daz ich des gewis bin
that I of-that certain am

daz got die sêle im habe erkorn.
that God the soul for-himself has chosen.

ir schœnen lîp hât si verlorn,
her beautiful body has she lost,

daz wizzet, von den beiden:
that know, from the both:

daz ein was daz scheiden
the one was the parting

daz von ir tet ir lieber man,
which from her did her dear husband,

nâch des minne ir herze bran;
after whose love her heart burned;

daz ander daz si iuch verlôs.
the other that she you lost.

von disem leide si erkôs
from this sorrow she chose

den tôt mit jæmerlîcher klage.
the death with lamentable lament.

ẹz ist hiute an ḍẹm drîzigesten tage
it is today on the thirtieth day

daz bestatet wart diu reine
that interred became the pure-one

undẹr einem edeln steine
under a noble stone

in der stat ze Riodach;
in the city at Riodach;

mit mînen ougen ich daz sach.
with my eyes I that saw.

daz vingerlîn sande si her;
the little-ring sent she hither;

daz was ir jungestiu ger
that was her last desire

daz ich iu daz bræhte
that I to-you that should-bring

und man dâ bî gedæhte
and one there by should-think

muoterlîcher triuwe
of-motherly faith

und senlîcher riuwe.'
and of-longing rue.'

daz vingerlîn enpfie sîn hant;
the little-ring received his hand;

daran er geschriben vant
thereon he written found

'owê, geselle und ouch mîn kint!
'alas, companion and also my child!

von iu mîn varwe ist worden blint,
from you my color is become blind,

mîn rôtez golt gar überzint.'
my red gold wholly over-tinned.'

Gawein vows never to marry again, nor to seek knighthood unless need compels him. At Nantasan Arthur and Guinevere receive Larie with honor, and the court learns that Gawein is Gwigalois's father. After seven days Gwigalois takes leave, and Gawein counsels his son and laments Florie. At Korntin Gwigalois and Larie rule in joy and have a son, Lifort Gawanides, whose tale Wirnt leaves to another; he laments the world's decline, names his source as a squire's oral tale, and ends with their lives and their reward in heaven.

Von disem mære gestœret wart
By this tale disturbed became

ir aller vreude an der vart.
of-them all joy on the journey.

her Gwîgâlois zę herṛęn Gâwein sprach
lord Gwigalois to lord Gawein spoke

‘ditz leit ist alles leides dach
‘this sorrow is of-all sorrow roof

daz uns got noch ie erbôt;
which to-us God yet ever offered;

unser beider lîp ist an ir tôt:
our both life is in her death:

si was mîn muoter und iuwęr wîp.
she was my mother and your wife.

ist rehtiu konschaft ein lîp,
(if)-is true marriage one body,

diu ist mit stæte iu an ir tôt.’
it is with constancy to-you in her death.’

von dirre klage wurden rôt
from this lament became red

ir ougen und ir herze sêr.
their eyes and their hearts sore.

‘waz mac ich nu sprechen mêr’
‘what may I now say more’

sô sprach her Gâwein der degen,
so spoke lord Gawein the thane,

'wan daz mîn vreude sî gelegen
'except that my joy be lain

mit ir hiute vür disen tac
with her today before this day

der ich mit hôhem muote ie pflac.
which I with high spirit ever tended.

ichn wil konlîcher ê
I will of-marital law

mit stæte gepflegen nimmer mê,
with constancy take-care never more,

noch rîterschaft, michn twinges nôt.
nor of-knighthood, unless-me compel-it distress.

owê dir, unbescheiden tôt!
alas to-thee, indiscriminate death!

du nimest mangen schœnen lîp
thou takest many-a beautiful body

und læst vil wundernaltiu wîp
and lettest very wondrous-old women

leben gar über ir zil.
live wholly beyond their goal.

du gîst der werlte jâmers vil!'
thou givest to-the world of-grief much!'

sus riten si mit grôzer klage
thus rode they with great lament

und kômen an dem zwelften tage
and came on the twelfth day

in die stat ze Nantasan.
into the city at Nantasan.

dâ was vil manic werder man
there was very many-a worthy man

bî Artûs, dem künige hêr.
by Arthur, the king lordly.

dô si gehôrten rehte wer
when they heard rightly who

dâ kæmẹ, des wurdens alle vrô.
there came, of-that became-they all glad.

ûf ir ors si sâzen dô
upon their steeds they sat then

und enpfiengen si mit rîterspil.
and received them with knightly-game.

man sach dâ kurzewîle vil
one saw there pastime much

von rîtern und von vrouwen,
from knights and from ladies,

die gerne wolden schouwen
who gladly would behold

die küniginne von Korntîn.
the queen of Korntin.

Artûs und daz wîp sîn,
Arthur and the wife his,

mit in diu mässenîe gar,
with them the household wholly,

dîe kômen ûf daz velt dar
they came onto the field there

zenpfâhen die geselleschaft
to-receive the company

mit williges herzen kraft.
with willing heart's strength.

deiswâr, daz was billîch,
truly, that was fitting,

dar kâmen vünf vürsten rîch,
there came five princes rich,

gesellẹn der tavelrunder,
companions of-the round-table,

und aller schœne ein wunder:
and of-all beauty a wonder:

diu künigîn Lârîe,
the queen Larie,

des wunsches amîe.
of-the ideal beloved.

si wurden wol enpfangen.
they became well received.

dô daz was ergangen,
when that was done,

durch die stat si dô riten
through the city they then rode

mit vil rîterlîchen siten
with very knightly customs

und kômen vür des küniges hûs.
and came before the king's house.

der vil getriuwe Artûs,
the very faithful Arthur,

sîn wîp, vrou Ginovêre,
his wife, lady Guinevere,

und ander vrouwen mêre
and other ladies more

die kômen ûf den helfant,
they came up-to the elephant,

dâ man den wunsch von rîcheit vant
where one the ideal of richness found

und die küniginne.
and the queen.

ir schœne was der minne
her beauty was the love's

geleite und ir krône;
escort and its crown;

den jâmer si ze lône
the grief she as reward

gap mit süezen blicken;
gave with sweet glances;

si kunde wol verstricken
she could well ensnare

die sinne dem herzen
the senses to-the heart

mit êwiclîchem smerzen.
with eternal pain.

der künic Artûs si enpfie,
the king Arthur her received,

dar nâch vrou Ginovêre gie
there after lady Guinevere went

mit manger vrouwen wol getân.
with many-a lady well made.

die künigîn si kuste sân
the queen she kissed at-once

und enpfie vil minneclîche
and received very lovingly

ir juncvrouwẹn alle gelîche.
her young-ladies all alike.

dâ wart vil manic kus getân
there became very many-a kiss done

von den vrouwen wol getân;
by the ladies well made;

si giengen mit ein ander dan.
they went with one other away.

Diu künigîn vrouwẹn Lârîen nam,
The queen lady Larie took,

als ez ir êren wol gezam,
as it to-her honors well befitted,

und der künic Artûs.
and the king Arthur.

si leiten si in ir hûs
they led her into their house

mit vrœlichem schalle.
with joyful noise.

die edeln rîter alle
the noble knights all

enpfiengen vrouwẹn Lârîen,
received lady Larie,

des wunsches âmîen.
of-the ideal beloved.

alle die si gesâhen
all those-who her saw

des prîses si ir jâhen
of-the prize they to-her granted

an schœne unde an sælicheit
in beauty and in blessedness

und daz ir lîbe wærẹ bereit
and that to-her body were ready

der wunsch an wîplîchem zil;
the ideal at womanly goal;

sus wart si geprîset vil
thus became she praised much

von der mässenîe.
by the household.

diu künigîn Lârîe
the queen Larie

gie dô mit der wirtîn.
went then with the hostess.

ir kamergwant truoc man în
her chamber-clothing carried one in

und entladete den helfant.
and unloaded the elephant.

künic Artûs nam bî der hant
king Arthur took by the hand

den jungen künic von Korntîn;
the young king of Korntin;

in und den vater sîn
him and the father his

vuort er mit vreuden ûf den sal,
led he with joys up-to the hall,

dâ daz gesinde über al
where the household over all

si vil williclîche enpfie.
them very willingly received.

der grâve Hojir dô gie;
the count Hojir then went;

er und sîne amîe,
he and his beloved,

mit rehter kurtôsîe
with right courtesy

enpfiengen si den werden degen.
received they the worthy thane.

swie sîn prîs wære gelegen
however his prize were lain

von des heldes manheit,
by the hero's manhood,

im was iedoch sîn dienst bereit.
to-him was yet his service ready.

sîns gelückes wâren sị alle vrô.
of-his luck were they all glad.

alrêrst gevrieschen si dô
first-of-all learned they then

daz sîn vater was her Gâwein,
that his father was lord Gawein,

des zuht ie âne wandel schein.
whose breeding ever without flaw shone.

der helt beleip mit vreuden dâ
the hero remained with joys there

siben tage, und gerte sâ
seven days, and desired at-once

urloubes, er und sîn gespil:
leave, he and his playmate:

si hêten ze tuonne vil
they had to do much

dâ heime in ir lande.
there at-home in their land.

daz was in allen ande,
that was to-them all grievous,

rîtern unde vrouwen.
knights and ladies.

doch muosen si schouwen
yet must they behold

daz der helt danne schiet,
that the hero thence parted,

als im sîn unmuoze riet.
as to-him his business counseled.

der helt urloubes gerte;
the hero of-leave desired;

des in ungerne gewerte
of-that him unwillingly granted

sîn nevẹ, der künic Artûs.
his kinsman, the king Arthur.

er sprach ‘daz ir ûz mînem hûs
he spoke ‘that you out-of my house

nû ze disen zîten
now at these times

sô gâhes müezet rîten,
so hastily must ride,

daz ist mir inniclîche leit;
that is to-me inwardly grievous;

mîn dienest ist iu bereit,
my service is to-you ready,

dar zuo mîn helfe und mîn rât,
there to my help and my counsel,

swenne ir mich daz wizzen lât,
whenever you me that know let,

wand ir mîn næhster mâge sît.
for you my nearest kinsman are.

neve, ir sult vür dise zît
nephew, you shall beyond this time

triuwen an mich warten
faith toward me expect

âne valsches scharten.'
without falsehood's notches.'

her Gwîgâlois sprach âne spot
lord Gwigalois spoke without mockery

'herre, daz vergelte iu got!
'lord, that repay to-you God!

der rede ist mir von iu ze vil;
of-the speech is to-me from you too much;

nu wizzet daz ich immer wil
now know that I ever will

iu dienstes wesen undertân
to-you of-service be subject

die wîle und ich den lîp hân.'
the while and I the life have.'

urloup nam der helt dâ
leave took the hero there

zem künige und ouch anderswâ,
of-the king and also elsewhere,

und vrouwe Lârîe, sîn gespil.
and lady Larie, his playmate.

die buten dienstes harte vil
they offered of-service very much

den vrouwen und der rîterschaft.
to-the ladies and to-the knighthood.

her Gâwein und sîn [gẹ]selleschaft
lord Gawein and his [c]ompany

die konduwierten si von dan,
they escorted them from thence,

und manic ander werder man,
and many-a other worthy man,

der ich niht genennen kan.
whom I not name can.

Dô kêrte der helt gegẹn Korntîn;
Then turned the hero toward Korntin;

her Gâwein, der vater sîn
lord Gawein, the father his

reit mit im besunder.
rode with him apart.

er sprach 'got hât sîn wunder
he spoke 'God has his wonder

und sîn genâde an iu getân.
and his grace on you done.

ir sult im wesen undertân
you shall to-him be subject

und minnẹt in herzelîche.
and love him heartily.

der sinne sît ir rîche,
of-the wits are you rich,

des guotes und der êren;
of-the goods and of-the honors;

daz sult ir allez kêren
that shall you all turn

swâ ir mugẹt nâch sînẹm gebot.
wherever you can after his command.

swer herzelîche minnet got,
whoever heartily loves God,
der ist behalten hie und dort.
he is kept here and there.
sun, nu merket disiu wort
son, now mark these words
und behalt diu âne missetât, —
and keep them without misdeed,—
daz ist mînes herzen rât: —
that is my heart's counsel:—
sît bescheidẹn an allen dingen
be discerning in all things
und lât niht verdringen
and let not crowd-out
die jugent iuwer sinne;
the youth your wits;
der iuch mit triuwen minne
who you with faith loves
an den sult ir iuch lâzen
on him shall you yourself rely
und bœses schimpfes mâzen;
and of-wicked jest refrain;
vernemet armer liute klage
hear poor people's lament
und büezẹt ir kumber alle tage;
and remedy their trouble all days;
sît gewizzen unde guot;
be wise and good;
den vînden traget hôhen muot,
toward-the enemies bear high spirit,
den vriunden sît geselliclîch
to-the friends be sociable
und miltẹ: sô werdẹt ir lobes rîch;
and generous: so become you of-praise rich;

bietet den gesten êre
offer to-the guests honor

nâch iuwẹr gewizzen lêre;
after your wisdom's teaching;

sît dem gehülfic unde guot
be to-him helpful and good

der iuwern willen gerne tuot.
who your will gladly does.

disem râte volget nâch:
this counsel follow after:

lât iuwern zorn niht wesen gâch;
let your anger not be hasty;

tragt scham ob allen iuwern siten.
bear modesty above all your customs.

ich wil iuch manen unde biten
I will you urge and beg

daz ir gedenkẹt der vrouwen mîn,
that you think of-the lady mine,

bî der ich wil mit jâmer sîn,
by whom I will with grief be,

der reinen Flôrîen.
the pure Florie.

sold ieman wâfen schrîen
should anyone to-arms cry

über gotes gwalt, daz tæte ouch ich,
over God's power, that would-do also I,

wand er hât beroubet mich
for he has robbed me

mîner hœhsten wunne;
of-my highest delight;

si was ein breḥẹndiu sunne
she was a gleaming sun

enmitten in mîṇẹm herzen.
in-the-middle in my heart.

owê des grôzen smerzen
alas the great pain

den ich nu ewiclîche trage
which I now eternally bear

mit tôtlîcher jâmers klage!'
with deadly grief's lament!"

vor leide sị beide weinden;
for sorrow they both wept;

mit triuwen si bescheinden
with faith they showed

daz si in beiden liep was.
that she to-them both dear was.

'munt von wîbe nie gelas,'
'mouth from woman never read,'

sprach her Gwîgâlois der degen,
spoke lord Gwigalois the thane,

'diu gänzlîcher kunde pflegen
'who more-entirely could practice

wîplîcher güete;
of-womanly goodness;

ir herze in tugent blüete
her heart in virtue bloomed

alsô der süezen rôsen bluot
as the sweet rose's bloom

des morgens gegẹn der sunnen tuot.'
in-the morning toward the sun does.'

sus truogen si des jâmers last;
thus bore they of-the grief load;

diu vreude was ir herzen gast.
the joy was to-their heart a-guest.

ganziu triuwe ir beider pflac
whole faith of-them both took-care

unz an ir ende mangen tac.
until to their end many-a day.

sînen vater er mit vlîze bat
his father he with diligence begged

swen im der reise würde stat,
when to-him the journey should-become possible,

daz er kœme in sîn lant;
that he should-come into his land;

daz lopte her Gâwein zehant.
that promised lord Gawein at-once.

ein ander si dô kusten;
one other they then kissed;

si truogẹn under ir brusten
they bore under their breasts

triuwe âne wenken,
faith without wavering,

die valsch niht mohte beschrenken.
which falsehood not could fence-in.

sîne liebe tohter kuste er dô;
his dear daughter kissed he then;

der herze wart vor leide unvrô
whose heart became for sorrow unglad

daz si sich muosen scheiden.
that they themselves must part.

den gelieben beiden
to-the beloved both

gap der helt vil süezen segen
gave the hero very sweet blessing

und bat ir got aller pflegen.
and begged of-them God all to-take-care.

sus nâmen si dô urloup dâ;
thus took they then leave there;

mit jâmer si sich schieden sậ.
with grief they themselves parted at-once.

her Gâwein und des küniges man
lord Gawein and the king's men

die kêrten gegen Nantasan,
they turned toward Nantasan,

her Gwîgâlois gegẹn Korntîn.
lord Gwigalois toward Korntin.

vrouwe Lârîẹ diu künigîn
lady Larie the queen

weinde unde was unvrô.
wept and was unglad.

her Gwîgâlois si trôste dô;
lord Gwigalois her comforted then;

mit schimpflîchem mære
with jesting tale

benam er ir die swære.
took he from-her the heaviness.

si was untriuwen lære.
she was of-faithlessness empty.

Sus kômen si ze Korntîn.
Thus came they to Korntin.

der künic und diu künigîn
the king and the queen

besâzen dâ ir eigen lant,
possessed there their own land,

dâ man sît immer mêre vant
where one since ever more found

vreude nâch des herzen gir.
joy after the heart's desire.

ezn liege dịụ âventiure mir,
unless-it lie the adventure to-me,

sît si dâ wurden sedelhaft,
since they there became settled,

vrouwen unde rîterschaft
ladies and knighthood

vant man dâ zallen zîten vil.
found one there at-all times many.

die burc nant man der vreuden zil.
the castle named one the joys' goal.

ein wîtiu stat dâ vor lac
a wide city there before lay

wüeste vil mangen tac;
waste very many-a day;

die besatzter unde bûwet sị wol.
it garrisoned-he and built it well.

daz lant wart allez vreuden vol
the land became all of-joys full

von des heldes sælicheit.
from the hero's blessedness.

got sîn dienest was bereit
to-God his service was ready

mit lûterm herzen; alle tage
with pure heart; all days

vernam er armer liute klage
heard he poor people's lament

und buozte in ir kumbers nôt,
and remedied to-them their trouble's distress,

als im diu mâze ie danne gebôt.
as to-him the measure ever then commanded.

mit vreuden lebten si ir jâr.
with joys lived they their years.

vrouwe Lârîẹ von im gebar
lady Larie by him bore

und von gotes stiure
and by God's help

einen sun, des âventiure
a son, whose adventure

mir ze wilde wære,
to-me too wild were,

ze krump und ze swære,
too crooked and too heavy,

von sô wunderlîcher [gẹ]schiht
of so wondrous [h]appening

daz ichz mit mînem getiht
that I-it with my poetry

nimmer triuwe errecken.
never trust to-recount.

er muoz die sinne endecken
he must the wits uncover

swer si ze rehte tihten wil;
whoever it to right compose will;

daz mære ist hôher sinne ein zil.
the tale is of-high wits a goal.

der selbe sun wart genant,
the same son became named,

sîn nam wîten erkant,
his name widely known,

Lifort Gâwânides.
Lifort Gawanides.

sîn âventiure giht des
his adventure says of-that

daz rîters tât zer werlte nie
that knight's deed in-the world never

gesteic mit wârheit hœher ie.
climbed with truth higher ever.

er kundẹ mit rîcher jost diu sper
he could with rich joust the spears

hurticlîchẹ nâch rîters ger
chargingly after knight's desire

in dem poinder brechen,
in the charge break,

durch herte schilte stechen.
through hard shields stab.

sîn gernder prîs nâch êren ranc.
his eager prize after honors wrestled.

âvoy, wie dicke im sît gelanc
avoy, how often to-him since succeeded

an mangem herten strîte!
in many-a hard strife!

er sluoc wunden wîte
he struck wounds wide

durch helme und durch härsenier.
through helms and through mail-coifs.

der helt wart mänlîch unde fier.
the hero became manly and proud.

disẹ âventiure nem sich an
this adventure take itself on

ein sô künstiger man
a so skillful man

der wildiu wort künne zamen.
who wild words can tame.

vremdiu mære und vremde namen
strange tales and strange names

hât diu âventiure.
has the adventure.

ich gibim daz ze stiure
I give-him that as help

swer si gerne tihten wil,
whoever it gladly compose will,

daz ich in wîse ûf ir zil
that I him direct onto its goal

dâ si geschriben hât ein man
where it written has a man

der ir im wol ze tihten gan,
who it to-him well to compose grants,

von der wälsche in diutsche zungen.
from the French into German tongue.

mich hât von ir gedrungen
me has from it pushed

mîn krankiu kunst und mîn sin;
my feeble art and my wit;

von ir ich sus gescheiden bin.
from it I thus parted am.

swie kranker kunst ich doch sî,
however of-feeble art I yet be,

ich belîbẹ der âventiure bî.
I remain the adventure by.

diuhte mîn werc die wîsen guot
(if)-seemed my work to-the wise good

und vünde ich ein sô ringen muot,
and (if)-found I a so light mind,

der mich dâ zuo beriete,
which me there to would-counsel,

mîn zunge si verschriete
my tongue it would-cut-up

und begunde sị wider lîmen
and began it back to-glue

mit ganzen niuwen rîmen.
with whole new rhymes.

als ich wæne, des envinde ich niht.
as I believe, of-that find I not.

owê der jæmerlîchen [gẹ]schiht
alas the lamentable [h]appening

daz diu werlt niht vreuden hât!
that the world not joys has!

ir hœhstez lebẹn mit grimme stât;
its highest life with grimness stands;

daz ist rîters orden!
that is knight's order!

ich bin wol innen worden
I am well inside become

daz der werlte vreude sinket
that the world's joy sinks

und ir êre hinket;
and its honor limps;

daz prüevet in diu gîticheit,
that brings-about to-them the greed,

diu bœsen muot und erge treit.
which wicked mind and meanness bears.

owê! daz ist mîn herzeleit.
alas! that is my heart's-sorrow.

Ich wil daz mærẹ volenden hie,
I will the tale complete here,

als michz ein knappe wizzen lie
as me-it a squire know let

der mirs ze tihten gunde.
who to-me-it to compose granted.

niwan eines von sînẹm munde
only once from his mouth

enpfie ich dịẹ âventiure;
received I the adventure;

dâ von was mir tiure
there from was to-me scarce

daz mære an mangen enden.
the tale at many-a end.

mînen sin wil ich wenden
my wit will I turn

an ein ander, und wizzet daz
to an other, and know that

diu wirt von mir erriten baz.
it becomes by me ridden better.

her Gwîgâlois und sîn wîp
lord Gwigalois and his wife

rîcheit und êren pflac ir lîp
of-richness and honors tended their body

ân alle missewende
without all blemish

schône unz an ir ende.
beautifully until to their end.

ir reinez lebẹn verdiente hie
their pure life deserved here

daz gotes gnâde sị dort enpfie
that God's grace them there received

dâ tûsent jâr sint ein tac.
where thousand years are a day.

dẹheinẹs herzen sin gemezzen mac
of-no heart's wit measure may

der vreude niht gelîche
to-the joy not alike

diu ist in himelrîche;
which is in heaven's-kingdom;

dar uns noch got gesende
thither us yet God send

ûz disem ellende!
out-of this exile!

hie hât daz buoch ein ende.
here has the book an end.